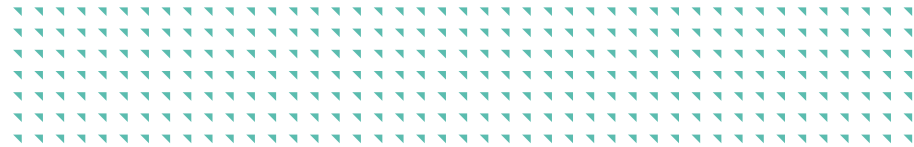




CITROËN C4



HANDBOOK

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Access to the online handbook



The **Handbook** is available on the CITROËN website, in the "MyCitroën" section or at the following address:
<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.



Direct access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën C4.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in detail.






Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this Complete Handbook is passed on to the new owner.

In this document, you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it, as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

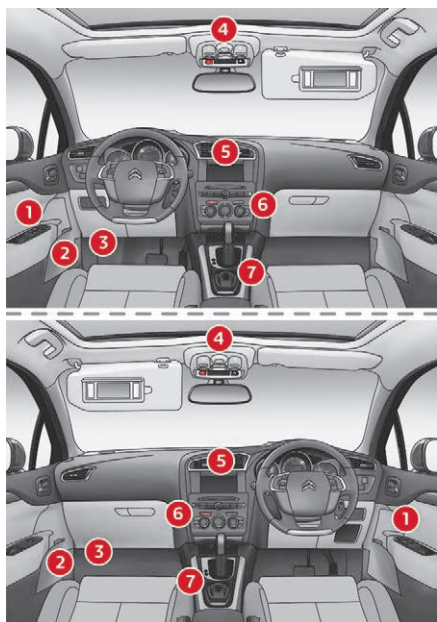
Key

-  Safety warning
-  Additional information
-  Contributes to the protection of the environment
-  Left-hand drive vehicle
-  Right-hand drive vehicle

<p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">Overview ■</p>	<p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">Access 2</p>	<p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">Lighting and visibility 4</p>
<p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">Eco-driving ■</p>	<p>Remote control key 49</p> <p>Keyless Entry and Starting 52</p> <p>Alarm 59</p> <p>Doors 61</p> <p>Boot 62</p> <p>Electric windows 64</p>	<p>Lighting controls 97</p> <p>Direction indicators 99</p> <p>Headlamp adjustment 102</p> <p>Directional lighting 103</p> <p>Wiper control stalk 105</p>
<p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">Eco-driving 7</p>	<p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">Ease of use and comfort 3</p>	<p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">Safety 5</p>
<p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">Instruments 1</p>	<p>Front seats 66</p> <p>Rear seats 71</p> <p>Steering wheel adjustment 73</p> <p>Mirrors 73</p> <p>Manual air conditioning 75</p> <p>Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 77</p> <p>Front demist – defrost 81</p> <p>Rear screen demist – defrost 82</p> <p>Front fittings 83</p> <p>Courtesy lamps 85</p> <p>Interior ambience lighting 86</p> <p>Centre consoles 87</p> <p>Front armrest 88</p> <p>Rear fittings 91</p> <p>Boot fittings 91</p> <p>Panoramic glass sunroof 94</p> <p>Luggage cover (commercial version) 95</p>	<p>Hazard warning lamps 109</p> <p>Horn 109</p> <p>Emergency or assistance call 109</p> <p>Electronic stability programme (ESC) 111</p> <p>Seat belts 114</p> <p>Airbags 117</p> <p>Child seats 121</p> <p>Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 123</p> <p>ISOFIX child seats 128</p> <p>Manual child lock 133</p> <p>Electric child lock 133</p>
<p>Instrument panels 9</p> <p>Rev counter 11</p> <p>Warning and indicator lamps 13</p> <p>Indicators 30</p> <p>Monochrome screen A 37</p> <p>Monochrome screen C 39</p> <p>Touch screen 41</p> <p>Trip computer 43</p> <p>Setting the date and time 47</p>		

Driving	6	Practical information	7	Technical data	9
Driving recommendations	135	Fuel	168	Engine technical data and towed loads	216
Starting/Switching off the engine with the key	137	Misfuel prevention (Diesel)	169	Petrol engines	217
Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting	139	Compatibility of fuels	170	Diesel engines	218
Manual parking brake	141	Snow chains	171	Dimensions	221
Electric parking brake	142	Very cold climate screen	172	Identification markings	222
Manual gearbox	145	Towing a trailer	172		
Automatic gearbox	146	Towbar with quickly detachable towball	173		
Gear shift indicator	149	Energy saving mode	177		
Stop & Start	150	Audio system pre-equipment	178		
Hill start assist	153	Changing a wiper blade	179		
Memorising speeds	154	Fitting roof bars	179		
Speed limiter	155	Bonnet	180		
Cruise control	157	Engines	181		
Lane Departure Warning System	160	Checking levels	182		
Blind spot monitoring	161	Checks	185		
Parking sensors	163	AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)	187		
Tyre under-inflation detection	165				
		In the event of a breakdown	8	Audio equipment and telematics	■
		Temporary puncture repair kit	190	CITROËN Connect Nav	
		Spare wheel	193	CITROËN Connect Radio	
		Changing a bulb	198	Audio system Bluetooth	
		Changing a fuse	205		
		12 V battery	209		
		Towing the vehicle	213		
		Running out of fuel (Diesel)	214		
				Alphabetical index	■

Instruments and controls



1

Door mirrors
Blind Spot Monitoring System
Window controls

2

Bonnet release

3

Dashboard fuses

4

Courtesy lamps
Rear view mirror
Ambience lighting
Blind (panoramic sunroof)

5

Monochrome screen A
Monochrome screen C
Touch screen
Setting the date and time

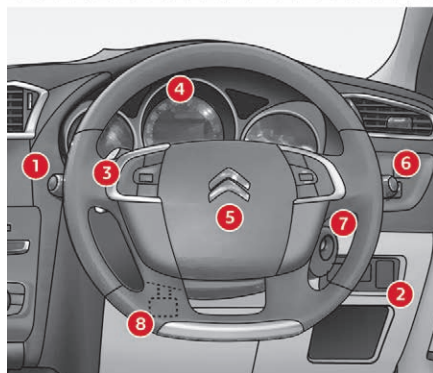
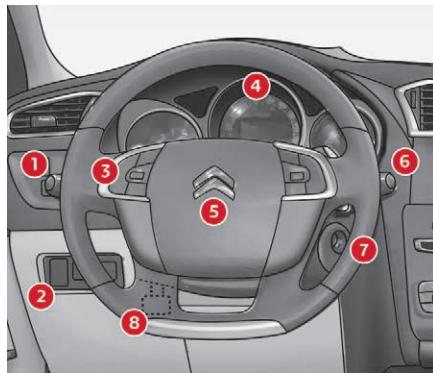
6

Manual air conditioning
Automatic air conditioning
Front demist/defrost
Rear screen demisting/defrosting

7

Manual gearbox
Automatic gearbox
Parking brake
Hill start assist
Stop & Start

Multifunction steering wheel



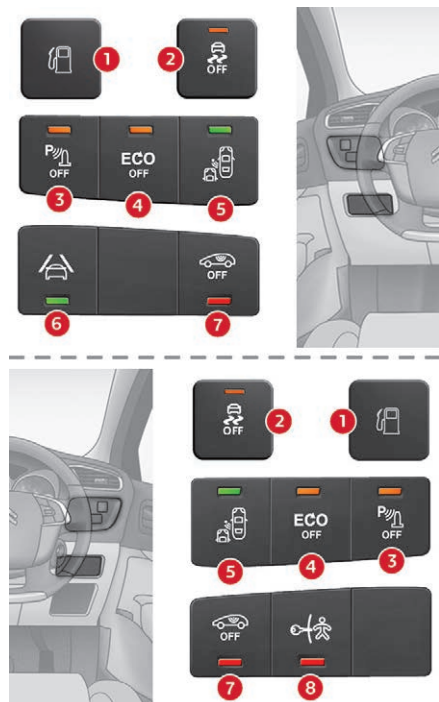
1	Lighting controls Direction indicators
2	Headlamp beam height adjustment
3	Speed limiter Cruise control Memorising speeds
4	Instrument panels Warning and indicator lamps Indicators Distance recorders
5	Horn
6	Wiper control stalk Trip computer
7	Starting – Switching off the engine
8	Steering wheel adjustment

Central switch panel



1	Hazard warning lamps
2	Central locking
3	Black panel (comfortable night driving display)

Side switch panel



1
Fuel filler flap release
2
DSC/ASR system
3
Parking sensors
4
Stop & Start
5
Blind spot monitoring
6
Lane departure warning system (depending on country of sale)
7
Volumetric alarm monitoring
8
Child lock (depending on the country of sale)

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. While accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired

temperature has been reached. Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic. Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions back in line with regulations.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,800 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Type 1 instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Engine oil level indicator.

6. Service indicator (miles or km) then, Odometer.

These two functions are displayed successively when switching on the ignition.

Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).

7. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
8. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
9. Time/Range (miles or km) related to the fuel or the AdBlue additive and the SCR system.

Control buttons

- A. Dashboard lighting dimmer (in night mode).
 - B. Reset the service indicator or the trip distance recorder.
- A and B.** Setting the time and selecting units.

Type 2 instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Engine oil level indicator.

6. Service indicator (miles or km) then, Odometer.
These two functions are displayed successively when switching on the ignition.
Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
7. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
8. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
9. Range (miles or km) related to the fuel or the AdBlue additive and the SCR system.

Control buttons

- A. Dashboard lighting dimmer (in night mode).
- B. Reset the service indicator or the trip distance recorder.

Customisable colour instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
5. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Service indicator (miles or km) then, Odometer.
8. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
9. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
10. Range (km or miles) related to the fuel or the AdBlue additive and the SCR system.

These two functions are displayed successively when switching on the ignition.

Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).

Control buttons

- A. "Dial COLOUR": customisation of the background colour of the dials.
- B. "Screen COLOUR": customisation of the background colour of the screens.
- C. Dashboard lighting dimmer (in night mode).
- D. Reset the service indicator or the trip distance recorder.

Rev counter



When approaching the maximum engine speed, the bars flash to indicate the need to shift up a gear.

i When switching the ignition on or off, the speedometer needle and the bars of the rev counter and fuel gauge carry out a full sweep and then return to 0.

Customising the instrument panel colours



You can change the colour of the instrument panel's dials independently from that of the display screens.

There are five colour variants, from white to blue.

i Press the appropriate button as many times as needed to obtain the desired colour.

- A.** For the dials.
- B.** For the display screens.

Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation, switched off (on/off indicator lamps) or has a fault (warning lamps).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds in the instrument panel when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before driving refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The switching on of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

There are two types of lighting for warning lamps, continuous (fixed) or flashing.

! Some warning lamps may present both types: fixed or flashing. Only by relating the type of lighting to the operating state of the vehicle can it be decided whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred. In the event of a fault, the illumination of the warning lamp may be accompanied by a message.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

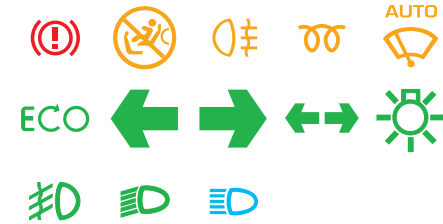
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further using the associated message.

If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Operation indicator lamps






The lighting of one of the following indicator lamps confirms that the corresponding system is on.





Deactivation indicator lamp





If this indicator lamp comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message being displayed.







Warning or indicator lamp		is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
	STOP	Fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, engine lubrication system or cooling system.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Maximum coolant temperature	Fixed red.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up to the required level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	The engine lubrication system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Seat belt not fastened/unfastened*	Fixed, then flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver or front passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt. At least one rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull on the belt in question and insert the tongue in the buckle. This warning repeats the seat belt information given by the roof console warning lamps.
	Battery charge	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.






* Depending on the country of sale.

Warning or indicator lamp	is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
	Door(s) open Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is still open.	Close the door or boot.
	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		
	Parking brake Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the manual or electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.




Warning or indicator lamp		is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
 + STOP	Brakes	Fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, associated with the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp, if the parking brake is released.	The braking system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + STOP + 		Fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Electric parking brake	Flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position P for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning or indicator lamp		is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
SERVICE	Service	On temporarily, accompanied by a message.	One or more minor faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as an open door or a discharged remote control battery. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message.	One or more major faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
	Engine self-diagnostic system	Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
		Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Warning or indicator lamp	is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
	Low fuel level	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	<p>When it first comes on, about 6 litres of fuel remain in the tank. You are now starting to use the fuel reserve.</p> <p>You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.</p> <p>Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp reappears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards 0.</p> <p>Fuel tank capacity: approximately 60 litres.</p> <p>Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.</p>
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS)	Fixed.	<p>The anti-lock braking system has a fault.</p> <p>The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.</p>
	Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)	Flashing.	<p>Regulation by the system is active.</p> <p>The system optimises traction and allows improved directional stability of the vehicle.</p>
		Fixed, associated with illumination of the indicator lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	<p>The DSC/ASR or hill start assist system has a fault.</p> <p>Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</p>


Warning or indicator lamp	is lit	Cause	Action/Observations	
	Power steering	Fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Under-inflation	Fixed.	The pressure in one or more of the tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
		Flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is no longer assured. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Airbags	Temporarily on.	This warning lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Foot on the clutch*	Fixed.	In STOP mode of Stop & Start, the transition to START mode has been rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully pressed down.	It must be pressed down completely to allow the engine to change to START mode.



* Only on the type 1 instrument panel.





Warning or indicator lamp	is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
 Presence of water in the Diesel fuel*	Fixed.	The diesel filter contains water.	Risk of damaging the fuel injection system on diesel engines. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
 Foot on the brake pedal	Fixed.	With an automatic gearbox, you have forgotten to press the brake pedal to move out of position P .	With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake you must press the brake pedal to unlock the automatic gear selector lever and move out of position.
 Particle filter (Diesel)	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.	This indicates that the particle filter is beginning to saturate.	Traffic conditions permitting, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the particle filter's additive level being too low.	This indicates that the level in the additive tank is low.	Quickly arrange for a top-up by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop.





* Only on the type 1 instrument panel.







Warning or indicator lamp		is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
	AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 370 miles and 2,500 miles (600 km and 2,400 km).	Have the AdBlue® tank topped up as soon as possible: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
		Flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 370 miles (0 and 600 km).	You must top up the AdBlue® tank to avoid a breakdown : go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
		Flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must top up the AdBlue® tank: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself. It is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to the corresponding tank.




 For topping up or for more information on **AdBlue®**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning or indicator lamp		is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
 <p>UREA + SERVICE + </p>	SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine auto-diagnosis warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine auto-diagnosis warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can continue driving for up to 650 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid a breakdown.
		Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine auto-diagnosis warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.






Warning or indicator lamp	is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
	Electric parking brake	Fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied. Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, pull the electric brake control. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the Electric parking brake , refer to the corresponding section.
	Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake	Fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty. Activate the function (depending on the country of sale) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Passenger's airbag system	Fixed on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, has been placed in the ON position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on this seat. Move the control switch to the OFF position to deactivate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, you can install a "rearward-facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).
	Passenger's airbag system	Fixed in the instrument panel and/or the seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the "OFF" position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a "rearward-facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on). Set the control to the "ON" position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on this seat.


Warning or indicator lamp		is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
	Diesel engine pre-heating	Fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2 nd position (Ignition on) or the " START/STOP " starting button has been pressed.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. Once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic gearbox, or the clutch pedal is pressed fully down with a manual gearbox. The period of illumination of the warning lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	Automatic wiper	Fixed.	The wiper control stalk has been pushed down.	Automatic windscreen wiping is activated. To deactivate automatic wiping, operate the control stalk downwards or put the stalk into another position.
	Lighting dimmer	Fixed.	The lighting dimmer is making an adjustment.	You can adjust the level of illumination of the instruments between 1 and 16.
	Rear foglamps	Fixed.	The rear foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearward to switch off the rear foglamps.



Warning or indicator lamp	is lit	Cause	Action/Observations	
	Stop & Start	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, etc.), the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		Flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode has been triggered automatically.	For more information on Stop & Start , refer to the corresponding section.
	Front foglamps	Fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward once to switch off the front foglamps.
	Left-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved up.	
	Directional headlamps	Flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have the vehicle checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Hazard warning lamps	Flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated warning lamps flash simultaneously.

Warning or indicator lamp	is lit	Cause	Action/Observations
 Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
 Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position or in the "AUTO" position in conditions of low light.	
 Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lighting control stalk has been pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk again to return to dipped beam headlamps.

Electric parking brake

Warning or indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
 + SERVICE	They are lit, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake fault".	Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the electric parking brake lever. Hill start assist is not available.	The automatic functions and the manual application are still available. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + AUTO  + SERVICE	They are lit, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake fault".	The automatic functions are deactivated. Hill start assist is not available.	The electric parking brake can only be used manually. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + AUTO 	They are lit, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake fault".	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Warning or indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	<p>They are lit, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake fault".</p>	<p>The automatic functions are deactivated. Hill start assist is not available.</p>	<p>When stationary, to apply the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ Switch off the ignition. ☞ Pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check that the electric parking brake warning lamps come on. <p>The application is slower than during normal operation.</p> <p>When stationary, to release the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Pull the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it. <p>If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work; you should secure your vehicle on a level surface:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ With a manual transmission: engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position P, then put a chock against one of the wheels. <p>Call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</p>



Warning or indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	They are lit, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake fault".	The manual application/release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.	Only the automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration functions are available. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	It is lit, accompanied by display of the message "Battery fault".	A discharged battery no longer permits use of the electric parking brake.	Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine, then immobilise the vehicle. ☞ With a manual transmission: engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, put a chock against one of the wheels. Call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.


i For more information on the use of the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Indicators

Service indicator

Warning or indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Comments
	Service spanner	Fixed, temporary when the ignition is switched on.	Between 600 miles (1,000 km) and 1,800 miles (3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds in the instrument panel. Depending on the version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the total distance recorder displays a line showing the distance remaining (in miles or kilometres) before the next service is due. - an alert message indicates the distance remaining (in miles or kilometres) as well as the period before the next service is due. <p>The service spanner disappears after a few seconds. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.</p>
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	Less than 600 miles (1,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds in the instrument panel. Depending on the version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the total distance recorder displays a line showing the distance remaining before the next service is due. - an alert message indicates the distance remaining as well as the period before the next service is due. <p>The service spanner remains on to show that a service is required very soon. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.</p>

Warning or indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Comments
	Service spanner	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	Service overdue.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds in the instrument panel. Depending on the version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the total distance recorder displays a line showing the distance travelled since a service was due. The value is preceded by the "-" sign. - an alert message indicates that a service is overdue. <p>The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed. The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.</p>
 + SERVICE		Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on, associated with the Service warning lamp.	Service overdue for Diesel BlueHDi versions.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds in the instrument panel. Depending on the version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the total distance recorder displays a line showing the distance travelled since a service was due. The value is preceded by the "-" sign. - an alert message indicates that a service is overdue. <p>The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed. The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.</p>

 The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the mileage covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

Resetting the service indicator

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,



- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the screen indicates "**=0**" and the spanner disappears, release the button.

i Following this step, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be taken into account.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press the trip distance recorder reset button.
The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)



On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been stopped for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Low oil level



This is indicated by the flashing of "OIL" or the display of a message, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal. If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking the levels** and, in particular, the oil level, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by "OIL--" flashing or the display of a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.

If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

For more information on **Checking the levels** and, in particular, the oil level, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® fluid range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of a simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest-range figure is the one displayed.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine starting inhibition system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When switching on the ignition, there is no automatic display of the range in the instrument panel.

Remaining range between 1,500 and 350 miles (2,400 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of "NO START IN" and a distance on the instrument panel, indicating the driving range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented – (e.g. "NO START IN 900 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 900 miles").

When driving, this message is displayed every 180 miles (300 km) until the fluid level has been topped up.

The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

It is recommended that you do not top up by more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® topped up. You can also top up the tank yourself.

i For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and, in particular, on topping up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

Range below 350 miles (600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes and the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display of "NO START IN" and a distance on the instrument panel, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented – (e.g. "NO START IN 180 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 180 miles").

When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® topped up. You can also top up the tank yourself.

Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)** and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown due to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes and the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or km on the instrument panel – ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented").

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required. If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

For more information on the **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! An engine starting inhibition system is activated automatically after you have driven a further 650 miles (1,100 km) following confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the "Emissions fault" message. The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after auto-diagnosis checks of the SCR emissions control system.

During the permitted driving phase (between 650 and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, associated with an audible signal and the display of a message indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition. You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

Starting prevented



When switching on the ignition, these warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or kilometres on the instrument panel – ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented").

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting inhibition system does not allow the engine to be started.

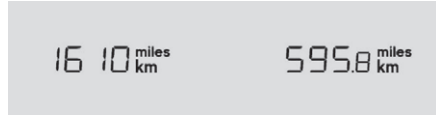
To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder

This measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



Trip distance recorder

This measures the distance travelled since it was last reset to zero by the driver.



- ☞ With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeroes appear.

Lighting dimmer

This permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the ambient light level. It only operates when the vehicle lighting is on in night mode.

Activation



- ☞ Press this button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
 - ☞ When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release this button, then press again to increase it.
- or
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release this button, then press again to reduce it.
 - ☞ Release the button once the desired level of brightness is reached.

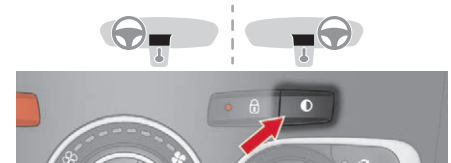


This indicator and the lighting value appear in the middle of the instrument panel during adjustment to show the setting from the 16 levels available.

Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode (daytime running lamps on), pressing the button does not have any effect.

Black panel (comfortable night driving display)



When driving at night, this allows certain instrument panel displays to be switched off so as to reduce visual fatigue for the driver. The essential driving information, such as the vehicle speed, warning lamps, automatic gearbox gear selected, cruise control or speed limiter information, remains on in the instrument panel.

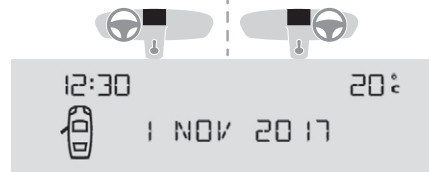
- ☞ With the exterior lighting on, press this button to activate the function.
- ☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function.

i Touch screen

You can return to the current display at any time by pressing the black screen or one of the menu buttons.

- i** In automatic headlamp illumination mode, the "Black panel" function is automatically deactivated once the ambient light reaches an adequate level.

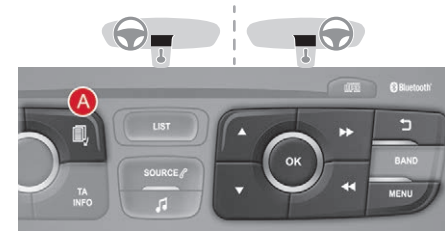
Monochrome screen A Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- exterior temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- the audio source being listened to,
- trip computer (refer to the corresponding section),
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:

- ☞ the "**MENU**" button to access the **main menu**,
- ☞ the "**▲**" or "**▼**" button to scroll through the items in the screen,
- ☞ the "**◀**" or "**▶**" button to change a setting value,
- ☞ button **A** to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source, etc.),
- ☞ the "**OK**" button to confirm,
or
- ☞ the "**Back**" button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu

- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**, then press the **"▲"** or **"▼"** buttons to scroll through the various menus:
 - "RADIO",
 - "MEDIA",
 - "TRIP COMPUTER",
 - "DATE AND TIME",
 - "LANGUAGES",
 - "VEHICLE PARAM".
- ☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio/Media

With the audio system switched on, once the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, Radio Text) or select the media play mode (normal, random, repeat).

For more information on the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Trip computer



Once the "TRIP COMPUTER" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of various equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Languages

Once the "LANGUAGES" menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display, from a predefined list.

Vehicle parameters

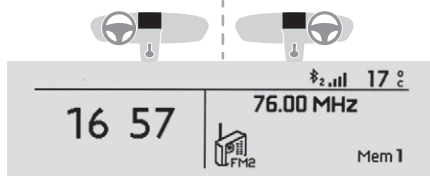
Once the "VEHICLE PARAM" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- "PARK BRAKE" (Automatic electric parking brake; see the "Driving" section),
- "BEND LIGHTING" (Directional lighting; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section),

- "AUTO HEADLAMPS" (Automatic illumination of headlamps; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section),
- "REAR WIPE ACT" (Rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; see the "Lighting and visibility" section),
- "GUIDE LAMPS" (Guide-me-home lighting; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section),
- "ELECTRIC BOOT" (Selective unlocking of the boot; refer to the "Access" section),
- "CABIN SELECT" (Selective unlocking; refer to the "Access" section).

! As a safety measure, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

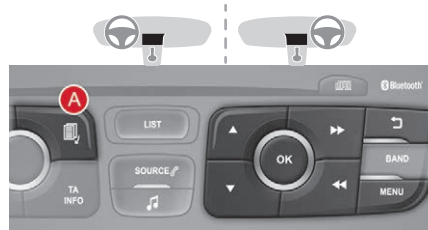
Monochrome screen C Displays on the screen



This displays the following information:

- the time,
- the date,
- the exterior temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- the audio source being listened to,
- telephone or hands-free kit information,
- the trip computer,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:

- ☞ button **A** to chooses between the display of audio information in full screen or the shared display of audio and trip computer information,
- ☞ the **"MENU"** button to access the **main menu**,
- ☞ the **"▲"** or **"▼"** button to scroll through the items in the screen,
- ☞ the **"◀"** or **"▶"** button to change a setting value,
- ☞ the **"OK"** button to confirm,
- or
- ☞ the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu

Personalisation-configuration



- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
 - "Multimedia",
 - "Telephone",
 - "Trip computer",
 - "Bluetooth connection",
 - "Personalisation-configuration".
- ☞ Press the **"◀"** or **"▶"** button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Multimedia" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat). For more information on the "Multimedia" menu, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

"Telephone" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.

For more information on the "Telephone" menu, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

"Trip computer" menu



This menu allows you to consult information concerning the status of the vehicle.

Warning log

This summarises the status and warning messages for systems (active, not active or faulty), displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Press the MENU button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the double arrows, then the OK button to select the **"Trip computer"** menu.
- ☞ In the **"Trip computer"** menu, select the "Warning log" line and confirm.

"Bluetooth connection" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be connected or disconnected and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files).

For more information on the "Bluetooth connection" menu, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

"Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Display configuration".

Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate the following equipment, classified in different categories:

- "Access to the vehicle":
 - "Plip action" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door),
 - "Unlocking boot only" (Selective unlocking of the boot).
- "Driving assistance":
 - "Automatic parking brake" (Automatic electric parking brake),
 - "Rear wipe in reverse gear" (Rear wiper coupled to reverse gear),
 - "Speeds memorised" (Memorising speeds).
- "Vehicle lighting":
 - "Directional headlamps" (Main/additional directional lighting).
- "Comfort lighting":
 - "Guide-me-home headlamps" (Automatic guide-me-home lighting),
 - "Welcome lighting" (Exterior/interior welcome lighting).

For example: setting of the duration of the "guide-me-home" lighting

- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to display the "Define the vehicle parameters" menu, then press **"OK"**.

Define the vehicle parameters

Driving assistance
Access to the vehicle

Lighting

Vehicle lighting

- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the "Comfort lighting" line, then the "OK" button; then follow the same procedure to select the "Guide-me-home headlamps" line.

Lighting

Follow-me-home headlamps 30 s
 Welcome lighting 30 s

OK

- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the "OK" button to confirm.

Lighting

Follow-me-home headlamps 30 s
 Welcome lighting 30 s

OK

- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the "OK" button to select the "OK" box and confirm or the "Back" button to cancel.

Choice of language

This menu allows you to change the language used by the display from a defined list.

Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time setting",
- "Display parameters",
- "Brightness".

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

Touch screen

The touch screen gives access to:

- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
 - audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
 - the display of the exterior temperature (a blue snowflake appears if there is a risk of ice),
 - the display of the trip computer.
- and, depending on equipment, allows:
- the display of visual parking sensors information,
 - access to the internet services and navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations that require sustained attention with the vehicle stationary.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.

Use is possible in all temperatures.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.



Use this button to adjust the settings for a function.



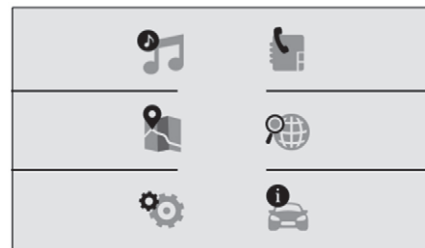
Use this button for access to additional information on a function.

OK

Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to return to the previous page.



CITROËN Connect Nav

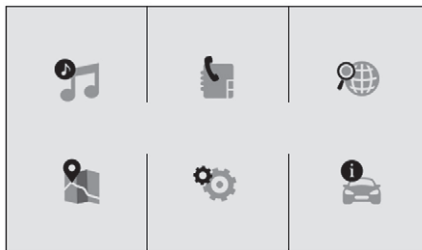
Workflow

Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen for access to the main menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. Some menus may display across two pages: press the "OPTIONS" button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.





To deactivate or activate a function, select "OFF" or "ON".

Menus



CITROËN Connect Radio



-  **Radio Media.**
-  **Mirror Screen or Connected navigation*.**
-  **Telephone.**
-  **Applications.**
Allows the display of the connected services available.

* Depending on equipment.



Settings.

Allows configuration of the display and the system.



Driving or Vehicle.

Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".



Volume adjustment/mute.

- Press with three buttons on the touch screen to access the menu carousel.

Upper bar

Certain information is always present in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Display of the exterior temperature.
- Reminder of information from the **Radio** and **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions.
- Notifications.



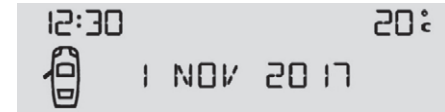
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen.

- Time display.

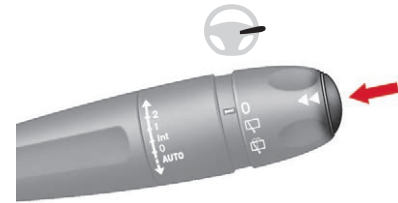
Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Monochrome screen A



Display of information



- Press the button located at the end of the **wiper control stalk**, to display the various trip computer data.

The trip computer information is the following:

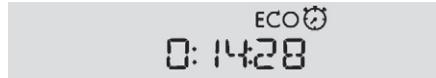
- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- Stop & Start time counter,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,

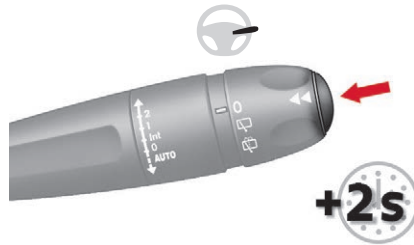


- average speed.



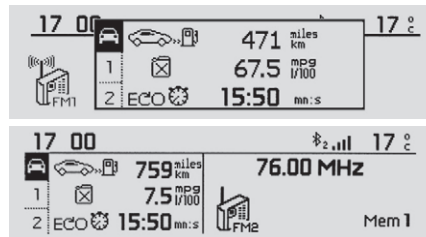
- ☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.

Reset

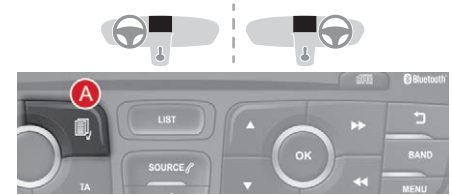


- ☞ Press this control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

Monochrome screen C

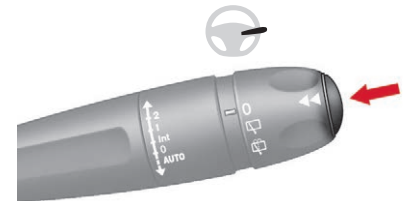


Display of information



You can choose between two display types by pressing button A:

- the trip computer information appears temporarily above the audio source information, displayed permanently in full screen,
- or
- the trip computer and audio source information both appear permanently in a shared screen.



- ☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper control stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.



- Current information with:
- range,
- current fuel consumption,
- Stop & Start time counter.

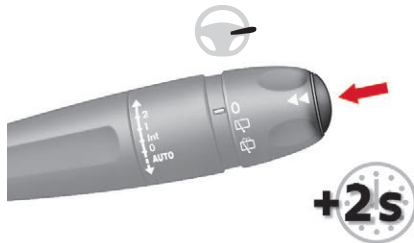


- The trip "1" tab with:
- distance travelled,
- average fuel consumption,
- the average speed for the first trip.



- The trip "2" tab with:
- distance travelled,
- average fuel consumption,
- the average speed for the second trip.

Reset trip



- ☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

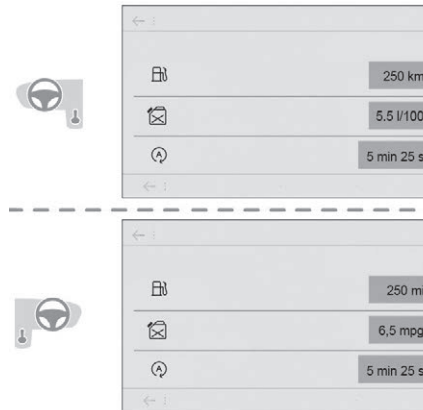
For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures and trip "2" for monthly figures.

Touch screen



The information is accessible in the vehicle configuration menu.

Display of information in the touch screen



Permanent display:

With CITROËN Connect Radio

- ☞ Select the "**Applications**" menu, then "**Trip computer**".

With CITROËN Connect Nav

- ☞ Select the "**Applications**" menu then the "**Vehicle apps**" tab then "**Trip computer**".

The trip computer information is displayed in tabs.

- ☞ Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a specific window:

- ☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and to display the different tabs.

The current information tab with:

- Range.
- Current fuel consumption.
- The Stop & Start time counter.

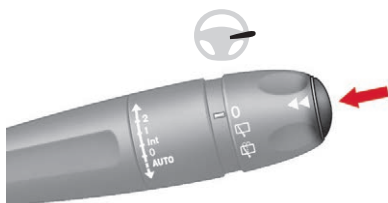
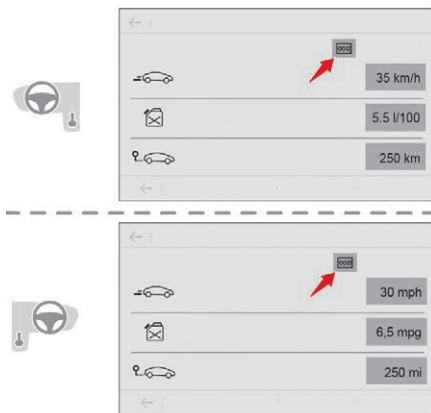
The trip "1" tab with:

- Average speed for the first trip.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance travelled.

The trip "2" tab with:

- Average speed for the second trip.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance travelled.

Trip reset



When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or on the end of the wiper control stalk.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used identically.

Trip "1" allows daily calculations to be carried out, for example, and trip "2" allows monthly calculations.

A few definitions...

Range

(miles or km)



The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

Dashes are displayed when the range falls below 20 miles (30 km).

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated over the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed above 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter



(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

or



If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start, a time counter adds up the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Setting the date and time In the instrument panel with clock



On the type 1 instrument panel (without audio system), to set the clock, use buttons **A** and **B** then carry out the operations in the following order:

- ☞ Press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: the minutes flash,
- ☞ Press **A** to increase the minutes or **B** to reduce the minutes,
- ☞ Press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: the hours flash,
- ☞ Press **A** to increase the hours or **B** to reduce the hours,
- ☞ Press **A** and **B** simultaneously: 24 H or 12 H is displayed and flashes,

- ☞ Press button **A** or **B** to change the format,
- ☞ Press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously to exit from time setting.

The usual screen displays again when the button hasn't been pressed for approximately 30 seconds.

Setting units in the instrument panel with clock

To change the display units on the type 1 instrument panel (without audio system), use buttons **A** and **B** then carry out the operations in the following order:

- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously for three seconds: km/h or mph flashes,
- ☞ press button **A** or **B** to change the units,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously to exit units setting.

The usual screen displays again when the button hasn't been pressed for approximately 30 seconds.

Monochrome screen A

Once the "DATE AND TIME" menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hours,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.

- ☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to display the "DATE AND TIME" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀" or "▶" button to change its value.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.
- ☞ Press the **OK** button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the **Back** button to cancel.

Monochrome screen C

- ☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to display the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time setting" button, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the setting to change. Confirm by pressing **OK**, then change the setting and confirm again to save the modification.

- ☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **OK** button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **OK** button to select the **OK** box and confirm or the **Back** button to cancel.

With CITROËN Connect Radio

- ☞ Select the **"Settings"** menu.



- ☞ Select **"Date and time"**.

- ☞ Select **"Date"** or **"Time"**.
- ☞ Choose the display formats.
- ☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"**.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

With CITROËN Connect Nav

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with GPS is deactivated.

- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu.
- ☞ Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



- ☞ Select **"Setting the time-date"**.

- ☞ Select the **"Date"** or **"Time"** tab.
- ☞ Adjust the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"**.

Additional adjustments

You can choose:

- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To change the time zone.
- To activate or deactivate synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing theft protection.

Unfolding/Folding the key



☞ Press this button to unfold/fold the key.

! If you do not press the button, there is a risk of damaging the remote control.

Unlocking the vehicle

Complete unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle completely.

Selective unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.



☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.



The complete or selective door unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.



Opening the windows using the remote control



☞ Press and hold the open padlock until the desired position is obtained. The windows stop when you release the button.

Unlocking with the key

☞ Turn the key forwards in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle completely.

2

i The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
The spotlamps in the door mirrors come on.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

Selective unlocking of the boot



☞ Press the central button on the remote control to unlock the boot. The doors remain locked.

If selective unlocking of the boot is deactivated, pressing this button also unlocks the doors.

! Don't forget to lock the boot again by pressing the closed padlock button.



The selective boot unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

By default, selective unlocking of the boot is activated.



Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock button to lock the vehicle.

Normal locking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

The direction indicators come on for a few seconds.

Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds. If the alarm had previously been activated, it will not be reactivated automatically.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.



- ☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking using the key



- ☞ Turn the key to the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.
- ☞ Turn the key to the rear again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold in at the same time.

In low light, deadlocking also switches on the guide-me-home lighting (see section "Visibility").

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Closing the windows using the remote control



- ☞ Press and hold the closed padlock until the desired position is obtained. The windows stop when you release the button.

! When closing the windows using the remote control you must ensure that nothing prevents them from closing correctly.
If you want to leave the windows partly open, you must deactivate the volumetric alarm monitoring.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



- ☞ Press the closed padlock button on the remote control.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for a few seconds.

Emergency control

System allowing mechanical door locking and unlocking in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

i In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Locking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the passenger doors

- ☞ Open the doors.
 - ☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
- For more information on the **child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.
- ☞ Remove the black cap on the edge of the



door, using the key.

- ☞ Without forcing, insert the key into the aperture; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking the passenger doors

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

Fault with the remote control

In the event of a malfunction with the remote control, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the door lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then reinitialise the remote control.

Reinitialisation

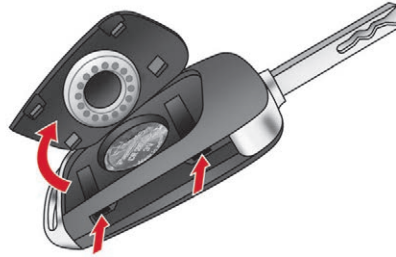
- ☞ Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the switch.
- ☞ Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- ☞ Turn the key back to position **2 (ignition on)**.
- ☞ Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

Changing the battery

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.

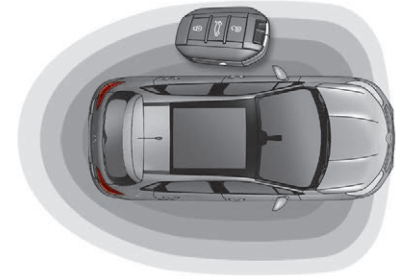
SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.



- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the two cut-outs.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its compartment.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its compartment observing the original fitting direction.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

! If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Keyless Entry and Starting



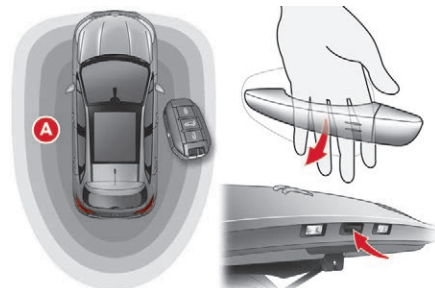
System that allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while keeping the electronic key on your person.

i The electronic key can also be used as a remote control. For more information on the **Remote control key**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle

The vehicle or just the driver's door is unlocked, depending on the setting.

Complete unlocking



- ☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control.

Selective unlocking

- ☞ To unlock only the driver's door, with the electronic key on your person, pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.

- ☞ To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind the handle of the front passenger door with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.



The complete or selective door unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.



Complete unlocking is activated by default.

- i** The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

- i** If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.

However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds.

If the alarm had previously been activated, it will not be reactivated automatically.

The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

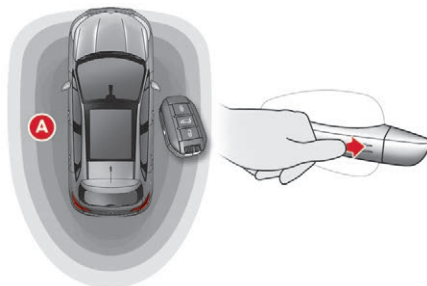
! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system, even for a short period.

Be aware of the risk of theft when the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "Hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader (see the "Starting the engine with the Keyless Entry and Starting system" section).

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



- ☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings).

Maintaining pressure allows the windows to be raised to the desired position.

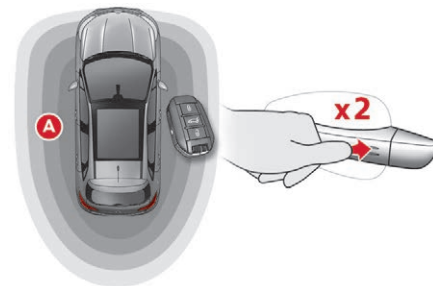
! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct operation of the windows. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

i The direction indicators come on for a few seconds. Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

Deadlocking



! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



- ☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.
- ☞ Within five seconds, press the door handle again to deadlock the vehicle.



! For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press the closed padlock button on the remote control.

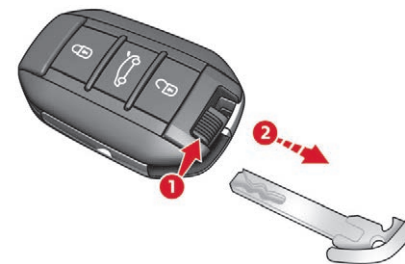
This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for a few seconds.

Back-up key

Unlocking/Locking using the integral key with Keyless Entry and Starting

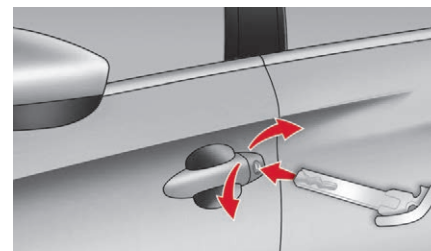
The integral key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the electronic key cannot operate:

- cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, etc.
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.



☞ Pull and hold button 1, to extract the integral key 2.

i If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.



Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

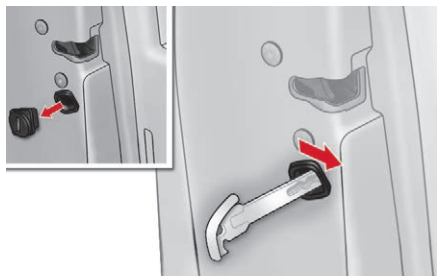
Unlocking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the passenger doors

- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.



- ☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the integral key.
- ☞ Insert the integral key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the integral key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking the passenger doors

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening handle.

Changing the battery

Battery replacement is signalled by the display of a message.

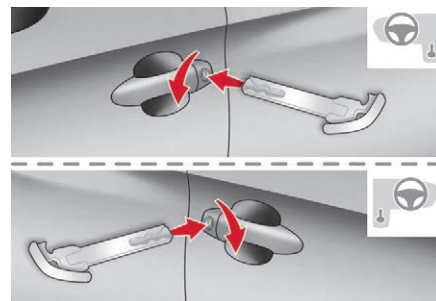


Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.

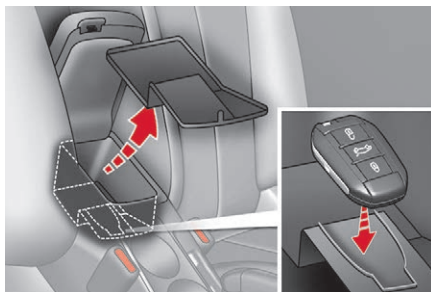
- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its compartment.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its compartment observing the original fitting direction.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

Remote control problem/reinitialisation

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.



- ☞ Place the back-up key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.



- ☞ Open the front armrest.
- ☞ Raise the mat by its tongue and remove it.
- ☞ Place the electronic key on the back-up reader.



- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "START/STOP" button.

The electronic key is now fully operational again.

Remember to refit the mat in the bottom of the armrest after removing the reinitialised electronic key.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

! Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. It may stop working, and the remote control would have to be reinitialised. The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw away the remote control batteries, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Central locking control

This control allows the simultaneous locking or unlocking of the doors and tailgate from inside the vehicle.

i If the vehicle is locked from the outside, this button is inactive.

☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle or pull an interior door handle to open a door.

Locking



☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

i If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.



This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

i Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Activation/Deactivation

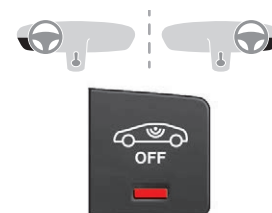
You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.



- ☞ With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.
- The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Alarm

(Depending on the country of sale.)



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- Perimeter monitoring

The system checks whether the vehicle is opened. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet, etc.

- Volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control.
- or
- ☞ Lock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

Following a vehicle locking request, the perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

If an access (door, boot, etc.) is not fully closed, the vehicle will not be locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.
- or
- ☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i If the vehicle locks itself again automatically (occurs 30 seconds after unlocking, if a door or the boot is not opened), the monitoring system is not reactivated automatically. To reactivate it, the vehicle must be unlocked and locked again, using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transportation by sea.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

i To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
- ☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
The indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second again.

Triggering of the alarm

This results in sounding the siren and flashing the direction indicators for thirty seconds. The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Remote control failure

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

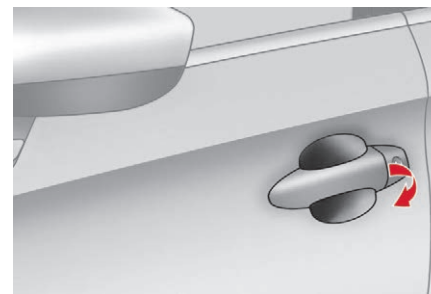
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault in the system. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Doors Opening

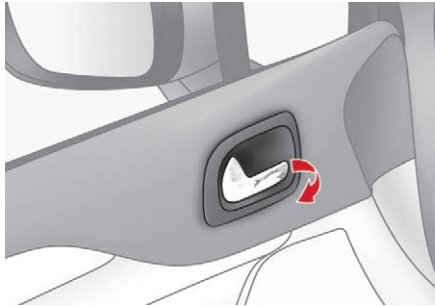
From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

i When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside



☞ Pull a door interior opening control; this unlocks the whole vehicle.

- i** With the selective unlocking activated:
- opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked),
 - opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.



The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:



- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an audible signal for a few seconds.

Boot

! In the event of a fault or difficulties encountered in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to prevent this inconvenience worsening, causing the lid to fall and serious injuries.

Opening

The vehicle or the boot only is unlocked, depending on the setting.

Complete unlocking



- After unlocking the vehicle or the boot with the Keyless Entry and Starting system electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot opening control then raise the tailgate.

Selective unlocking



The complete or selective boot unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.



- When unlocking of the boot only is activated:
- With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot unlocking control to unlock just the boot, then raise the tailgate.
- Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Closing

- Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

If the tailgate is not fully closed:



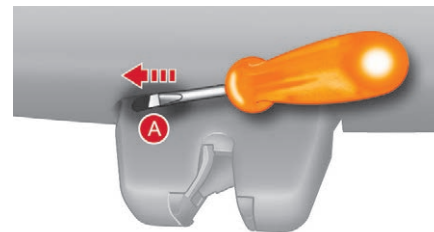
- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an audible signal for a few seconds.

Emergency release

System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.

Unlocking

- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



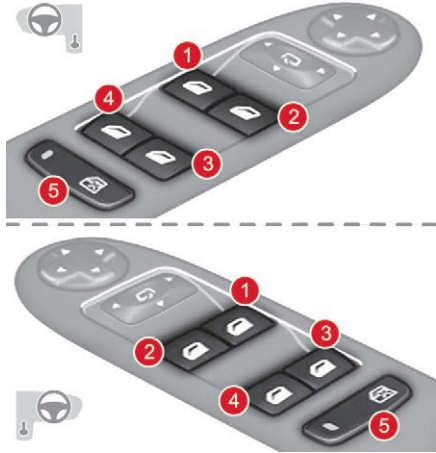
- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Electric windows

Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a deactivation system for the rear controls.



1. Driver.
2. Passenger.
3. Rear right.
4. Rear left.
5. Deactivation of the rear electric window controls.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the control without going past the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the control is released.

Automatic operation

- ☞ To open or close the window, press or pull the control fully, beyond the point of resistance: the window opens or closes completely when the control is released. Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

i If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), once the window has lowered:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivating the rear electric window controls



- ☞ For the safety of your children, press control 5 to prevent operation of the rear electric windows irrespective of their position.

If the indicator lamp is on, the rear controls are deactivated.

If the indicator lamp is off, the rear controls are activated.

! If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When operating the passenger electric window controls, the driver must ensure that nothing is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing the windows with the key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Reinitialisation

After reconnecting the battery or a fault, you must reinitialise the operation of the electric windows.

For each of the control switches on the driver's side control panel:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Front seats

! As a safety measure, adjustments to the driver's seat must only be done when stationary.

Correct driving position

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the height of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

! Once these adjustments have been made, check the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Manual adjustments

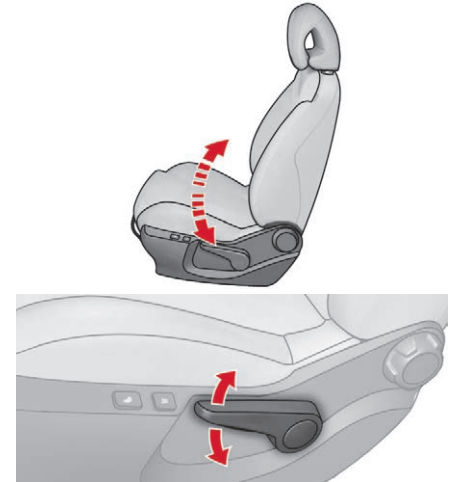
Forwards-backwards



- ☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- ☞ Release the control to lock the position.

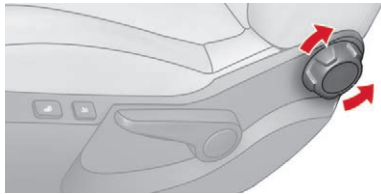
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no object or person in the way, preventing full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Seat height



- ☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the position required.

Seat backrest angle

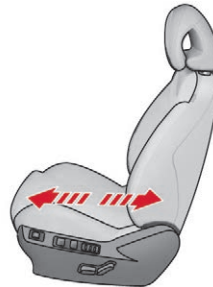


- ☞ Turn the control knob to adjust the seat backrest angle.

Driver's seat electric adjustments

- i** The electrical functions of the driver's seat are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off. To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

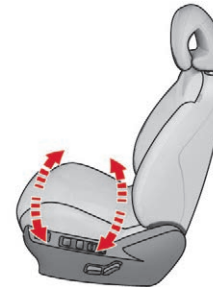
Forwards-backwards



- ☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

- !** Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no object or person in the way, preventing full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Cushion height and angle



- ☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- ☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

3

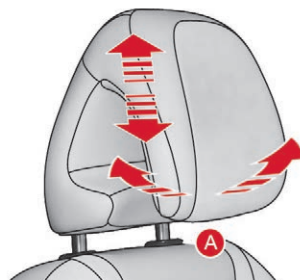
Seat backrest angle



- ☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

Additional adjustments

Head restraint height and angle



- ☞ To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- ☞ To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.
- ☞ To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or rearwards.

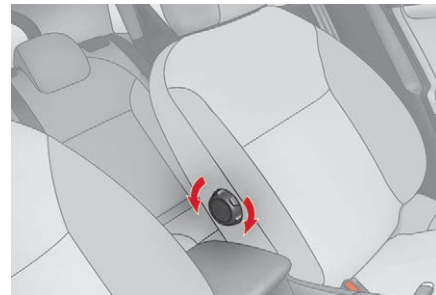
! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact. **The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.**

Removing a head restraint

- ☞ To remove it, press the lug **A** and pull upwards.
- ☞ To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back and press the lug **A** at the same time.

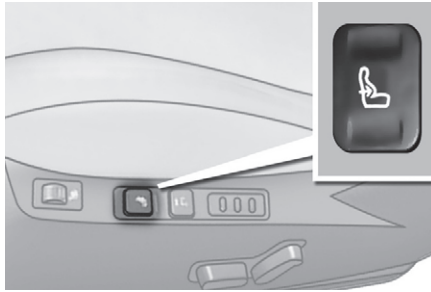
! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

Manual lumbar adjustment



- ☞ Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Electric lumbar adjustment



- ☞ Press the front or rear of the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function

This function provides a back massage; it only operates when the engine is running.



- ☞ Press the switch to activate the function. The indicator lamp on the switch comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 60 minutes. During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes each (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes break). After an hour, the function is automatically deactivated. The indicator lamp in the switch goes off.

Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing the switch. The movement in progress continues until the initial non-massage position is reached.

Storing driving positions

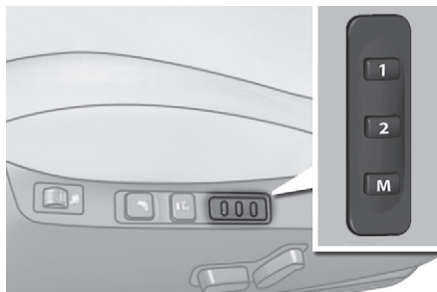


System which stores the electrical settings of the driver's seat and the door mirror settings. It enables you to store and recall two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

Storing a position

Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.



- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

- i** Storing a new position overwrites the previous position.

Recalling a stored position Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal indicates the completion of the adjustment.

- i** You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.



- ☞ Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

- 0** Off.
- 1** Low.
- 2** Medium.
- 3** High.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.



Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating of the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Rear seats

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrest (2/3 -1/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.

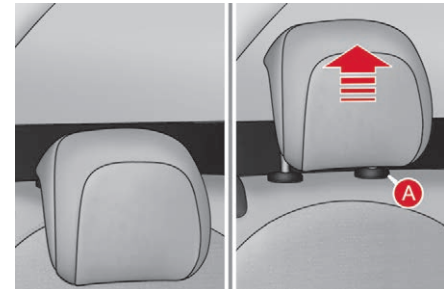
Rear head restraints

These have a position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).

They can also be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ release the backrest using the control **1**,
- ☞ tilt the backrest **2** slightly forwards,

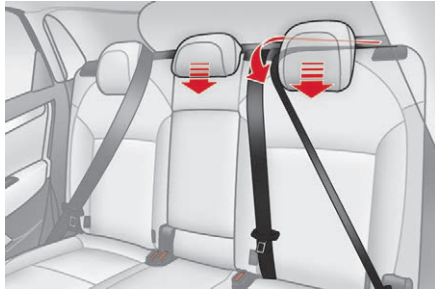


- ☞ pull the head restraint upwards to the stop,
- ☞ then, press the lug **A**.

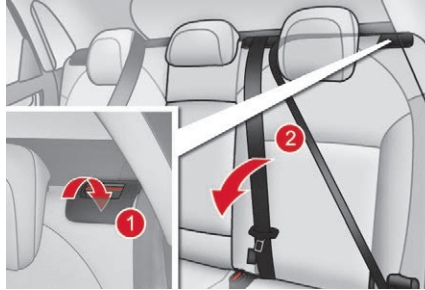
! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

Folding the backrest

- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.

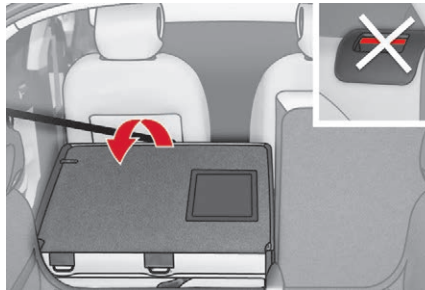


- ☞ Place the head restraints in the low position.
- ☞ Position the seat belt between the outer and centre head restraints to avoid trapping the belt when repositioning the seat backrest.



- ☞ Pull control 1 forwards to release the seat back 2.
- ☞ Fold the seat back 2 on to the cushion.

Returning the backrest to the normal position

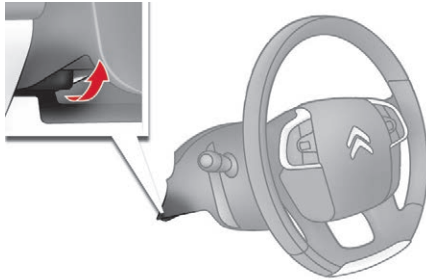


- ☞ Put the seat backrest in the upright position and lock it in place.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator, located next to the seat control, is no longer visible.

- ☞ Put the seat belt back in place on the side of the seat backrest.

! When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

Steering wheel adjustment



- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

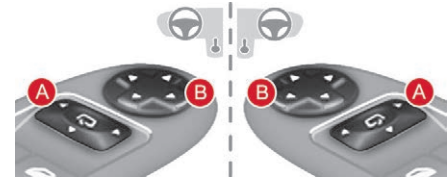
Demisting/Defrosting



If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Demisting and defrosting the rear screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

! The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".

3

Folding

- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If necessary the mirrors can be folded manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

Memorisation

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the selected mirror tilts downwards, in accordance with its memory.

Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.
or
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position. The mirror glass returns to its initial position. It also returns to its initial position:
 - if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
 - if the engine is stopped.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position



- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air intake/Air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning On/Off.

Adjusting the temperature



- ☞ Turn the dial to select a position between blue (cold) and red (hot) so as to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

3

Adjusting the air flow



This dial is used to increase or decrease the speed of the air booster fan.

- ☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to **5** to obtain the desired flow of air.

i ☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0**, the system is deactivated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Adjusting the air distribution

This dial is used to arrange the air distribution in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side air vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

Air intake/Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of condensation on the windscreen and side windows.

Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

i This function allows hot or cold air to be delivered selectively and more quickly. Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to avoid deterioration of the air quality and the formation of condensation.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.



☞ Press the button again to allow fresh outside air to enter. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate efficiently in all seasons, with the windows closed. It allows you:

- to lower the temperature in summer,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on



☞ Press the **A/C** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position **0**. To cool the air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a short time. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off

A/C

- ☞ Press the **A/C** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates when the engine is running.

Automatic operation



1. Automatic comfort programme
2. Temperature adjustment on driver/passenger side
3. Automatic visibility programme
4. Air conditioning On/Off.
5. Air distribution adjustment.
6. Air flow adjustment.
7. Air intake/Air recirculation.
8. "REST" function: ventilation with the engine off.

Automatic comfort programme

We recommend using one of the three AUTO modes available: they provide optimised regulation of the temperature in the passenger compartment according to the comfort value that you have chosen.

These three modes automatically adjust the air flow, according to the desired feel, while also maintaining the desired comfort value.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

AUTO

- ☞ Press the "AUTO" button in succession:
 - a first indicator lamp comes on; the "low" setting mode is selected,
 - a second indicator lamp comes on; the "medium" setting mode is selected,
 - a third indicator lamp comes on; the "high" setting mode is selected.

i In cold weather and when the engine is cold, the air flow will gradually reach its optimum level, taking account of the weather and the desired comfort level so as to avoid distributing too much cold air. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the desired comfort. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

3

Temperature adjustment on driver/passenger side

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their requirements. The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.



- ☞ Turn the dial to the left to lower the value and to the right to raise it.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

It is also recommended to avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

Automatic visibility programme



- For more information on **Front demisting – defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

- i** With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Manual control

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The "AUTO" button indicator lamps go off; the other functions will continue to be managed automatically.



- ☞ Pressing the "AUTO" button returns the system to full automatic operation.

- i** For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.



- ☞ Turn control knob to the left until "LO" is displayed or to the right until "HI" is displayed.

Air conditioning on/off



- ☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).



- ☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp in the "A/C" button comes on.

Adjusting the air distribution



- ☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:
 - the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
 - the outer and centre air vents,
 - the footwells.

You can combine the three orientations to obtain the desired air distribution.

Adjusting the air flow



- ☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps between the two fans come on progressively according to the value requested.

Air intake/Air recirculation



- ☞ Press this button to recirculate the interior air. The button's indicator lamp comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.



- ☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The button's indicator lamp goes off.

i Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode (risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality).

"REST" function: ventilation with the engine off

Even with the engine is off, you can operate the ventilation for a few minutes.

For example, if you leave the vehicle, ventilation can be provided to the passengers who stay inside without having to start the engine.

This function is available after switching on the ignition, as well as after stopping the engine. The availability period of the function depends on the state of charge of the battery.

You can activate the "REST" function as long as the air conditioning control displays are on.

When the ignition is switched on

- The control displays come on: the function is available.



- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by two dashes appearing in the control displays and four air flow level indicator lamps.

On stopping the engine

- While the control displays are still on: the function is available.



- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by two dashes appearing in the control displays and four air flow level indicator lamps.

Locking the vehicle has no effect on this function.

- The displays go off at the end of this period. Pressing this button again before the end of

the period stops the ventilation definitively: the control displays go off and the function is no longer available.

i This function does not operate the air conditioning, only the air blower. When the "REST" function is activated, you cannot modify the temperature, air flow and distribution settings: these are controlled automatically according to the exterior temperature. This function is not available when the Stop & Start is in STOP mode.

3

Deactivating the system



- ☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all indicator lamps are off.

This action switches off the air conditioning and the ventilation.

Thermal comfort is no longer controlled. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

- ☞ Change one of the settings (temperature, air flow or air distribution) or press the **AUTO** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

! Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode or driving for long periods with the system off (risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality).

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

- I** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:
 - ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
 - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
 - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
 - ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and replace the filter elements periodically. We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it helps both to purify the air breathed by the occupants and to keep the passenger compartment clean (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
 - ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the warranty and maintenance record.
 - ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.



If after an extended **period parked** in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.



The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.



Contains fluorinated greenhouse gases R134A.

Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A. Gas capacity 0.425 kg (+/- 0.025 kg), GWP index 1,430 t (equivalent CO₂: 0.608 t).



Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Front demist – defrost



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

With manual air conditioning



☞ Put the temperature, air flow and distribution controls in the appropriately marked position.

☞ Put the air intake control in the "Exterior air intake" position (control indicator lamp off).



☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the "**A/C**" button; the indicator lamp in the button comes on.



With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

With automatic dual-zone air conditioning

Automatic visibility programme



- ☞ Select this programme to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

- ☞ To stop the programme, press either the **visibility** button again or **"AUTO"**, the indicator lamp in the former button goes off and the indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

The system starts again with the values in use before it was overridden by the visibility programme.

- With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demist – defrost



- ☞ The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

Demisting – defrosting of the rear screen can only function when the engine is running.



- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Switching off

Defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

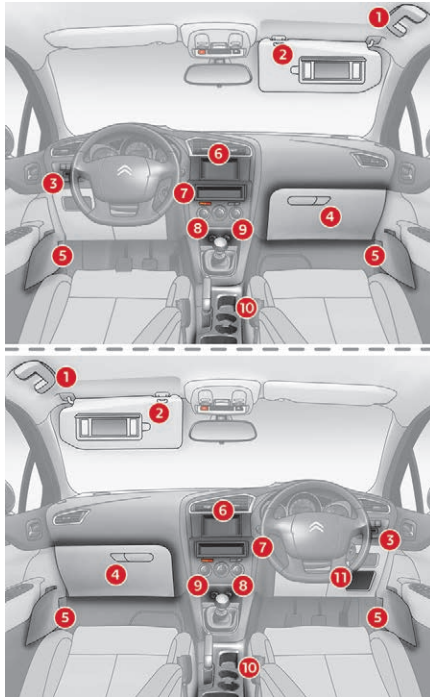


- ☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.



- ☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

Front fittings

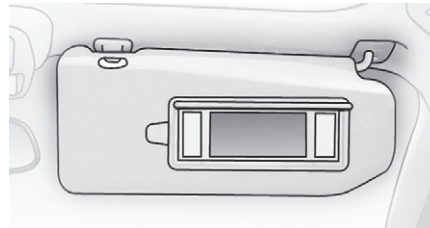


1. Grab handle
2. Sun visor
3. Card holder
4. Illuminated glove box

5. Door pockets
6. Large open storage box (without audio system)
or
Small storage box with flap (with audio system)
7. Small open storage box (without audio system)
8. USB port/Auxiliary socket
9. 12V accessory socket
10. Centre console with storage

Sun visor

Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated vanity mirror.

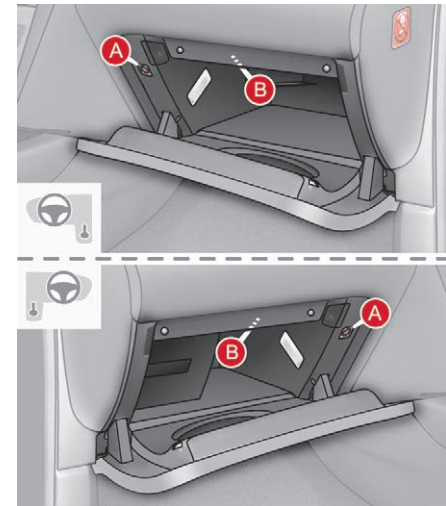


- ☞ With the ignition on, raise the manual blind; the mirror is illuminated automatically.
This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Illuminated glove box

This has dedicated locations for storing a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc. Its lid has locations for storing a pen, a pair of glasses, tokens, maps, a cup, etc.
☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle. The glove box is illuminated when the lid is opened.

3



It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch **A**.

Ease of use and comfort

It contains a ventilation nozzle **B** that can be closed, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

Mats

Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

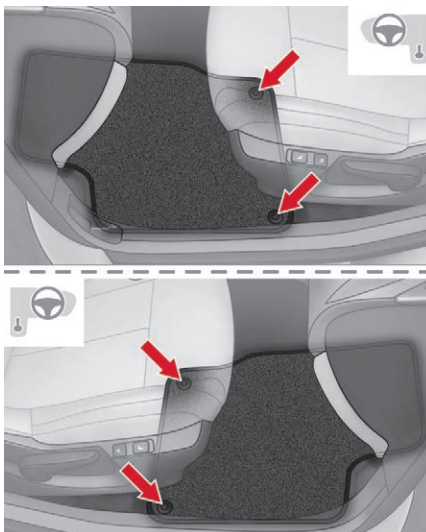
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting



To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB player



This connection box comprises a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket.

USB port

The USB port allows the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod®-type digital audio player, or a USB memory stick.

The USB player reads your audio files which are then transferred to the audio system and played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

These files are managed via the steering wheel controls or from the audio system.

i When connected to the USB port, the portable device can be charged automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.

The USB port also allows a telephone to be connected by a MirrorLink™ connection, so that certain telephone applications can be used via the touch screen.

Auxiliary Jack socket

The auxiliary Jack socket allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player, so that your audio files can be played through the vehicle's speakers.

The management of these files is done from the portable device.

Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps



3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear map reading lamps

3

Front and rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy saving mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

i When the courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position. To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps



i With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Interior ambience lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on



At night, two interior ambience lamps in the front courtesy lamp come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

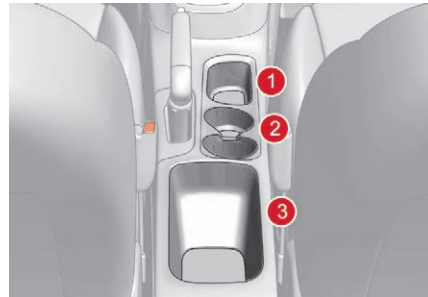
Switching off



The ambience lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off. It can be switched off manually by adjusting the instrument panel lighting dimmer button to one of the lowest settings.

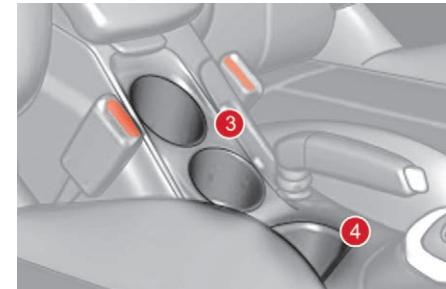
Centre consoles

Base version



1. Storage compartment
2. Cup holder
3. Large open storage box

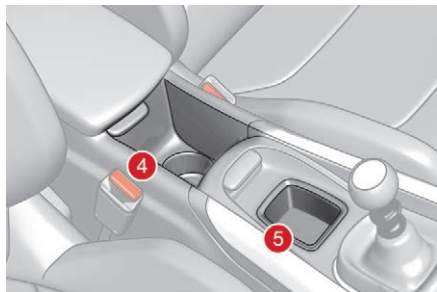
Semi-premium version



1. Front armrest
2. Open storage
3. Cup holders
4. Storage compartments

3

Premium version

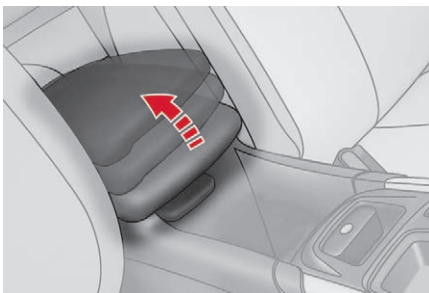


1. Front armrest
2. 12 V accessory socket
3. Storage box
4. Cup holder/Bottle holder
5. Storage pocket or START/STOP button (depending on version)

Front armrest

Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger. The height and length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.

Adjusting the height



- ☞ Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.

Longitudinal adjustment



- ☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.

Storage

There is a storage space below the armrest cover. Depending on equipment, it may contain a 230 V/50 Hz socket and the back-up reader for the electronic key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.



- ☞ Raise the paddle.
- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

Front armrest

Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.

The length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.

Longitudinal adjustment



- ☞ To move forwards, raise the paddle. The armrest slides forwards to its stop.
- ☞ To stow it, slide it fully back and press down to lock.

Storage

There is a storage space below the armrest cover. Depending on equipment, it may contain the back-up reader for the electronic key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.



- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

230 V/50 Hz power socket



A 230 V/50 Hz socket (max. power: 120 W) is installed in the centre console.

To use it:

- ☞ lift the front armrest cover for access to its compartment,
- ☞ check that the warning lamp is on green,
- ☞ connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, baby food warmer, etc.).

This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode with Stop & Start.

In the event of a fault with the socket, the green warning lamp flashes.

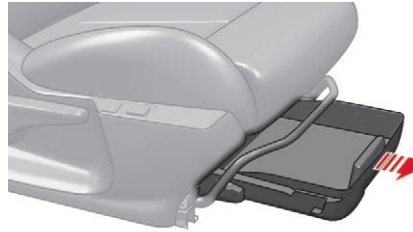
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension or multi-way connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), the power supply to the socket will be cut off; the green warning lamp goes off.

Storage drawers

Located under each front seat, except for the driver's seat on versions with electric seats.

Opening



- ☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it open.

! Do not place heavy objects in the drawer.

Removal

Avoid removing the drawer completely, as refitting it is not easy.

- ☞ Open the drawer fully.
- ☞ Pull the drawer upwards to disengage it.

Refitting

However, if it has been completely removed, to refit it:

- ☞ use the torch to illuminate the area under the seat,
- ☞ engage the drawer in its runners,
- ☞ lift the retaining tongues and slide the drawer under these tongues,
- ☞ at the end of its travel, press down on the drawer to engage it.

Rear fittings

12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

Rear armrest

Comfort system for rear passengers.



- ☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

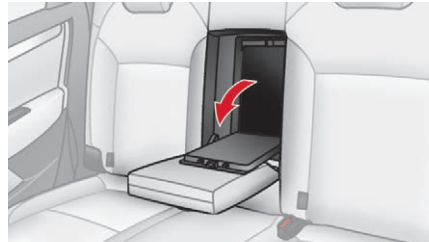
This also gives access to the ski flap.

Ski flap

Mechanism for storing and transporting long objects.

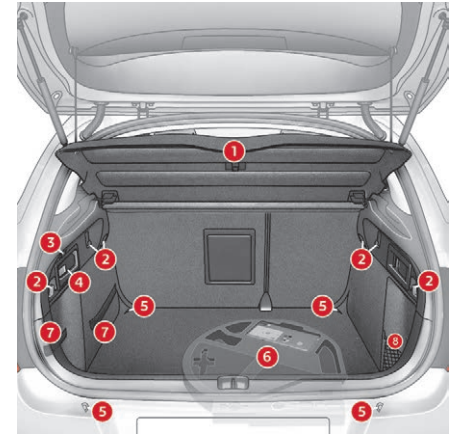
Opening

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull the flap handle downwards.



- ☞ Lower the flap.
- ☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

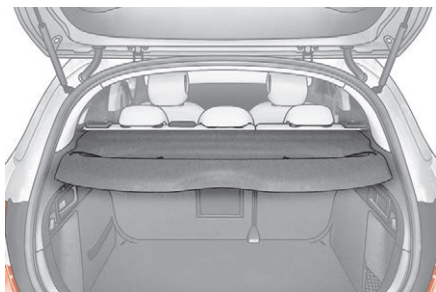
Boot fittings



1. Rear shelf
2. Hooks
3. 12 V accessory socket
4. Portable lamp
5. Stowing rings
6. Storage box
7. Retaining straps
8. Storage net

3

Rear shelf



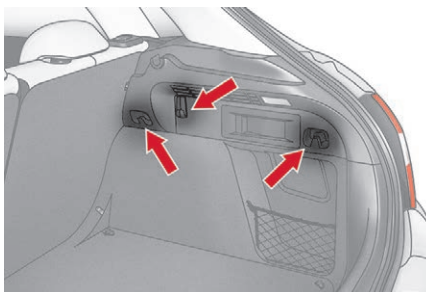
To remove the shelf:

- ☞ release the two cords,
- ☞ gently lift the shelf, then remove it.

There are several ways of storing it:

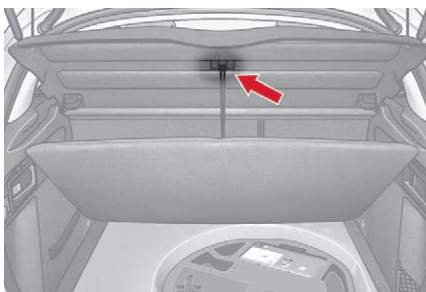
- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat on the bottom of the boot.

Hooks



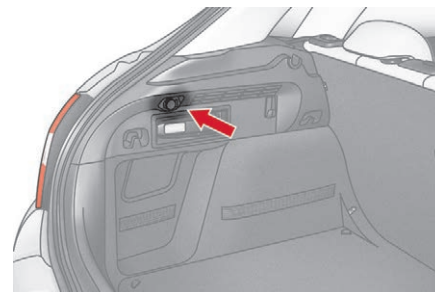
These can be used to secure shopping bags.

Access to the storage box



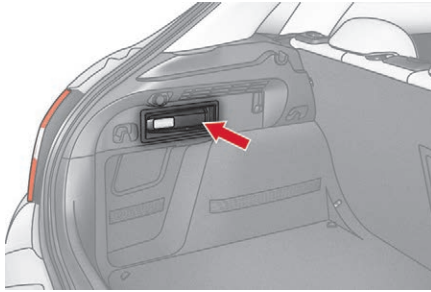
i An additional hook under the shelf is used to hold up the boot floor using its cord, to facilitate access to the tools and spare wheel or the temporary puncture repair kit, etc.

12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
- ☞ Turn the key to the ignition on position.

Portable lamp



This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.

For more information on the **Boot lamp**, refer to the corresponding section.

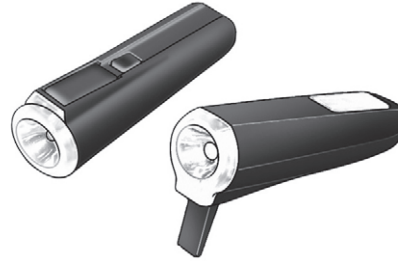
Operation

This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.

It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.

! Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.
Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal disposable batteries.

Use



- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards.
- ☞ Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support, located on the back, to hold up the torch, for example, when changing a wheel.

Storage

- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.
If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

i If the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

Storage box

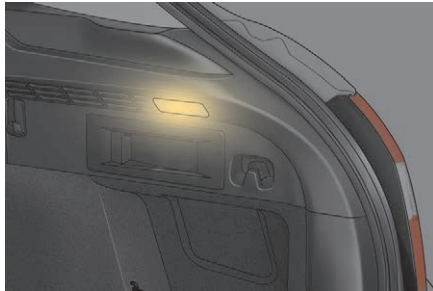


- ☞ Raise the boot carpet for access to the storage box.

The latter has compartments for storage of a box of spare bulbs, a first aid kit, etc. It also contains vehicle tools, the temporary puncture repair kit, etc.

3

Boot lighting



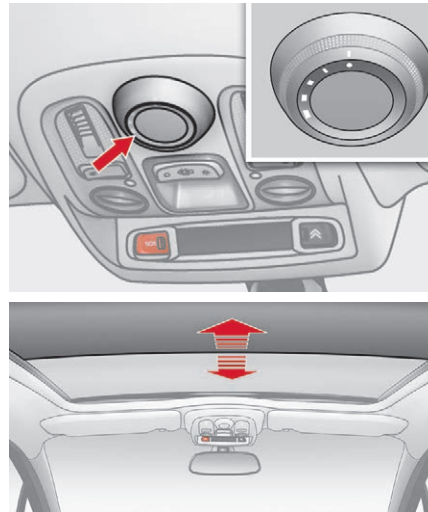
This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

- i** The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
 - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
 - with the engine running, unlimited.

Panoramic glass sunroof

Your vehicle is fitted with a tinted glass panoramic sunroof which increases the light and visibility in the passenger compartment. Its electric blind helps control the temperature.

Electric blind



Opening

- ☞ Turn the dial to the left (four possible settings).

Closing

- ☞ Return the dial to the initial position.
- ☞ If the position of the blind does not agree with the position indicated by the dial, press the dial to open the blind to this position.

Safety anti-pinch

If the blind encounters an obstacle during closing, it stops and partially opens again. If the blind fails to close at a second attempt, it may be necessary to force the closing of the blind using the system reinitialisation procedure.

Reinitialising the system

Following reconnection of the battery, or in the event of a malfunction in its operation, it may be necessary to reinitialise the system:

- ☞ turn the dial to the fully closed position,
- ☞ then immediately press the dial, closing starts after about 10 seconds,
- ☞ maintain pressure on the dial until the blind is completely closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

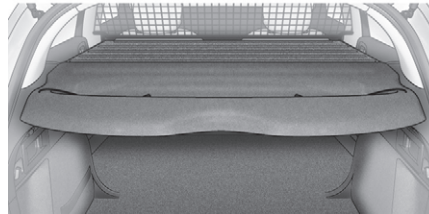
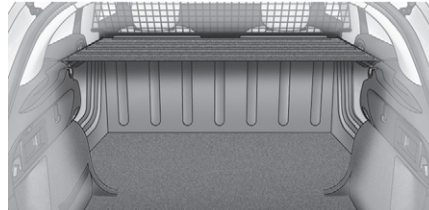
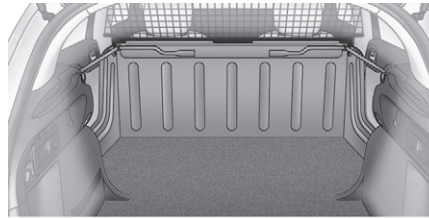
! In the event of contact (pinching) during operation of the blind, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do this, turn the dial.

When the driver operates the dial, they must ensure that nothing prevents the blind from closing correctly.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the blind correctly.

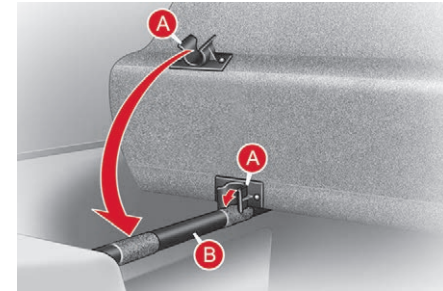
Be aware of children during operation of the blind.

Luggage cover (commercial version)



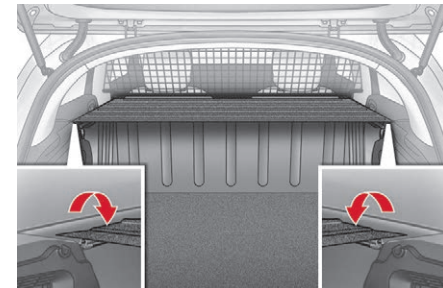
It conceals the interior of the vehicle in addition to the existing shelf.

Installation



- ☞ Insert the fixings **A** into the frame **B** and unroll the luggage cover.

Storage



- ☞ Roll the luggage cover towards the rear seats.

3

Removal

- ☞ Detach all the fixings.
- ☞ Lift each side of the luggage cover.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the luggage cover.
They can become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or impact.

Lighting controls

Selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively according to weather conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are provided to meet the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- rear foglamps,

- front foglamps with cornering lighting,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility on bends,
- daytime running lamps to be more visible during the day,
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting to facilitate access to the vehicle,
- parking lamps as vehicle side markers.

Settings

You can adjust the settings of certain functions:

- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- guide-me-home lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- directional lighting.

i Travelling abroad Halogen and xenon headlamps

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamp dipped beams must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Without AUTO lighting







With AUTO lighting



4

Selection of main lighting mode

Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

-  Lighting off (ignition off)/Daytime running lamps (engine running).
-  Automatic illumination of headlamps. Daytime running lamps/Dipped beam/Main beam.
-  Sidelamps.
-  Dipped or main beam headlamps.

Headlamp dipping

Pull the stalk towards you to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps or to activate automatic headlamp dipping. In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash"), for as long as the stalk is kept pulled.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Foglamps

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

With rear foglamps only




-  Rear foglamps

- ☞ To switch on the rear foglamps, turn the ring forwards.
- ☞ To switch off the rear foglamps, turn the ring rearwards.

When automatic illumination of headlamps is on (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on while the rear foglamps are on.

With front and rear foglamps



-  Front and rear foglamps

Turn and push the ring:

- ☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- ☞ once rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps; the sidelamps will then switch off.

! In good or rainy weather, day or night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

i **Switching off the lighting when the ignition is switched off**

On switching off the ignition, all of the lights turn off immediately, except for the dipped beams if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

i **Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off**

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring **A** to the 0 position – lighting off, then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

It will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge in battery (entering energy-saving mode).

Direction indicators (flashers)



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

i If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

Three flashes

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

On versions fitted with LED direction indicators, the line of LEDs is illuminated sequentially. The brightness of the daytime running lamps is reduced during sequential operation of the direction indicators.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

Switching on



- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ Another "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Parking lamps

Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



- ☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel. To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Daytime running lamps



Daytime lighting which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured by dedicated lamps.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of ambient light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, these lamps are switched off automatically and the daytime running lamps come on.

Switching on



- ☞ Turn the ring to the "AUTO" position. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of a message.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the ring to a position other than **AUTO**. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault

SERVICE

In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically. Do not cover the sunshine sensor, combined with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Automatic guide-me-home lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps is activated, if the ambient light level is low, the dipped beam headlamps remain lit when switching off the ignition.

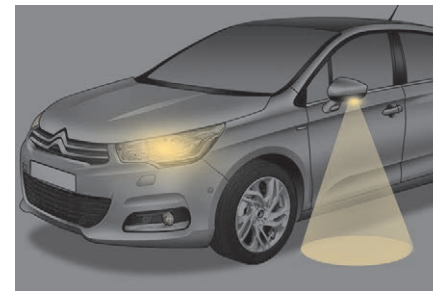
Programming



Activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle configuration or parameters menu.



Welcome lighting



The remote switching on of the lighting makes your access to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated depending on the ambient light level detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on



- ☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps, as well as the side spotlamps, located under the door mirrors, come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The welcome lighting switches off automatically after a programmed time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming



Activation, deactivation and the duration of the welcome lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Headlamp adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- . 3 people.
- 1. 5 people.
- . Intermediate setting.
- 2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.

- . Intermediate setting.
- 3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

i The initial setting is position "0".

Automatic adjustment of xenon headlamps



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system adjusts the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically when stationary, according to the load in the vehicle.

SERVICE If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen. The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

! Do not touch the xenon bulbs.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Directional lighting



When the dipped or main beams are on, this function allows the light beam to better follow the road.

The use of this function, coupled only with the xenon headlamps and the cornering lighting, improves significantly the quality of your lighting in bends.



Without directional lighting



With directional lighting

- i** The system does not operate:
- when stationary or at low speeds,
 - when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.



This function is activated by default. The state of the function stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Operating fault



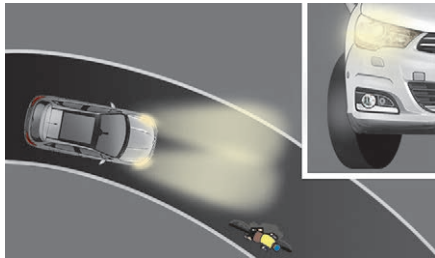
If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

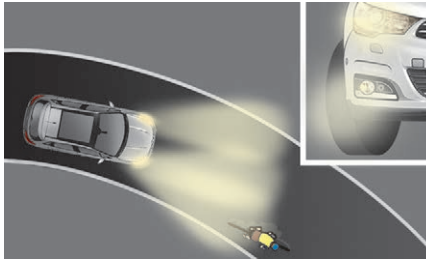
Cornering lighting



With dipped or main beams, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Without cornering lamp



With cornering lamp

Switching on

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,
- or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.



This function is activated by default.

Wiper control stalk

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning the screens. The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility according to the climatic conditions. The wipers are controlled by moving the wiping speed control stalk for the front and turning the ring for the rear.

Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

To select wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2

Fast wiping (heavy rain).

1

Normal wiping (moderate rain).

Int

Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

0

Off.



Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

AUTO ↓

Automatic wiping (press down, then release).

Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

4

Automatic windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rainfall is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall without any action on the part of the driver.

Switching on



- ☞ Briefly push the control stalk downwards.

The request is confirmed by a wiping cycle, accompanied by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and/or the display of an activation message.

Switching off



- ☞ Briefly push the stalk downwards again.

The request is confirmed by this indicator lamp going off in the instrument panel and/or the display of a deactivation message.

- ℹ The automatic windscreen wipers must be reactivated each time the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ⚠ Do not cover the rain sensor, combined with the sunshine sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Windscreen and headlamp wash

- ☞ Pull the wiper stalk towards you. The screenwash and then the wiper operates for a fixed period of time.

The headlamp washers only operate when the **dipped or main beam headlamps are on, with the vehicle moving.**

- ℹ To reduce the consumption of the fluid by the headlamp washers, they operate only with every seventh use of the screenwash or every 25 miles (40 km) during a given journey.

Low screenwash/headlamp wash fluid level

On vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low level of this fluid is indicated by a gauge located in the reservoir filler neck under the bonnet.

Checking and topping up this fluid should be done with the engine off.

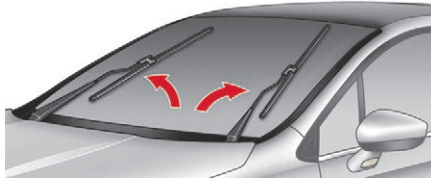
- ℹ The fluid level should be checked regularly, particularly during winter.

For more information on **Checking the levels** and, in particular, the screenwash/headlamp wash, refer to the corresponding section.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.



- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.
- ☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

- i** To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
 - clean them regularly using soapy water,
 - avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
 - replace them at the first signs of wear.

Rear wiper



- !** If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu.

To select the rear wiper: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.



Off.



Intermittent wipe.



Wash-wipe. Turn the ring fully; the rear screenwash, then the rear wiper automatically operates for a set duration.

Reverse

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wiper is operating.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.



General safety recommendations

! Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

! We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

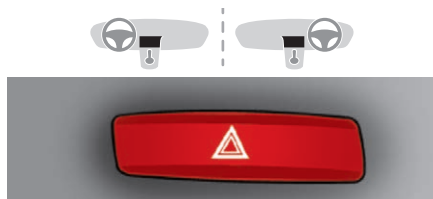
! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

Hazard warning lamps

Visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



☞ Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

It can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel with integrated controls.

i Use the horn moderately and only in the circumstances allowed by traffic regulations in the country in which you are driving.

Emergency or assistance call



Localised Emergency Call

SOS In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds.

The flashing green LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" service*.

SOS Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

5

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, contacts you in your own language** and – if necessary – requests that the relevant emergency services be dispatched. In countries where the service is not available, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** As per the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and telematic services is available at dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



The orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

The orange indicator lamp is permanently on: the back-up battery should be replaced. In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work. Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i A system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.



Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** Depending on the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by pressing "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.



To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by pressing "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes.

In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of the telematic services for customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

i If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Electronic stability system (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC: Electronic Stability Control) integrating the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of difficult surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

- i** The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp indicates that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.



If these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system.



STOP

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In both cases, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.



In emergency braking, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.



After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate these systems, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.



☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on to indicate that these systems are deactivated. The ASR and DSC systems will no longer have an effect on engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or above 30 mph (50 km/h).



☞ Press this button again to reactivate them manually.

Operating fault



The illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that there is a fault with these systems.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations, not only about the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components but also the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

To benefit in full from the effectiveness of these systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants. The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on. The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the passenger's chest, thus improving their protection.

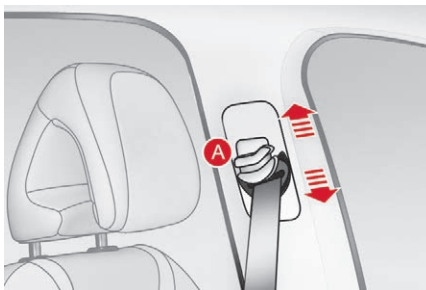
Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



- ☞ To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

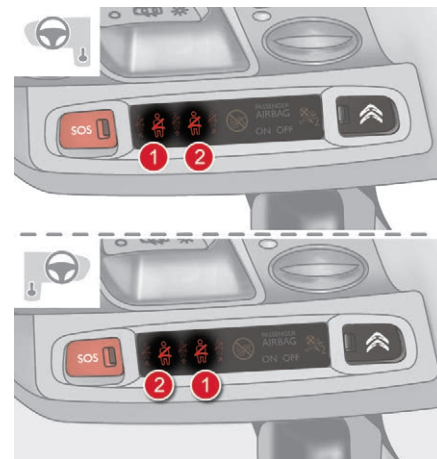
Seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel if the driver and/or the front passenger have not fastened their seat belt.

Above approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamps display



1. Driver's seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front passenger's seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.

If the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened, the corresponding warning lamp **1** or **2** illuminates in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Rear seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt and, for the outer seats, a force limiter.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- ☞ On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel



This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

Above approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display



3. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **3**, **4** and **5** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.

When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **3**, **4** and **5** come on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over.

You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact,

the pyrotechnic device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and, if necessary, replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

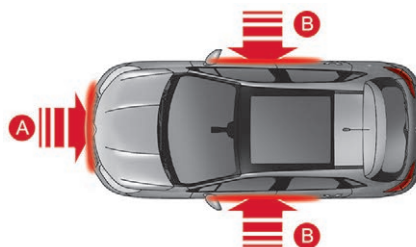
This system contributes towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger). If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the event of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

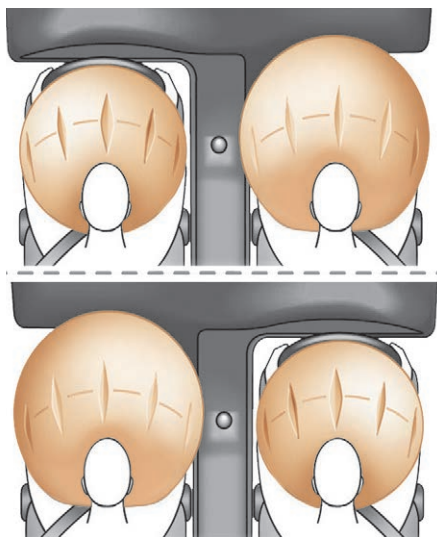


- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

i The deployment of an airbag is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system.

This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of an airbag may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe frontal impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed (except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated) in the event of a serious frontal impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

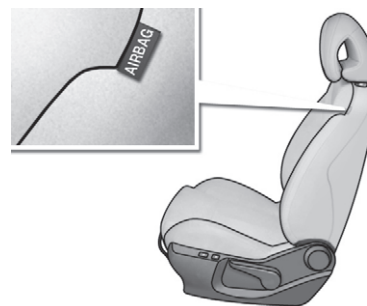
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, or the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Operating fault



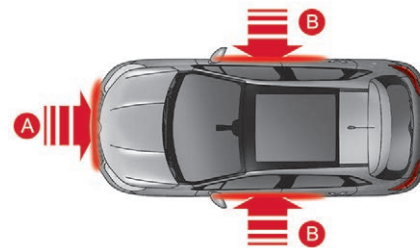
If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe side impact to minimise the risk of injury to the chest, between hip and shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Impact detection zones



- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

Deployment

The lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a severe side impact covering all or part of side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, the lateral and curtain airbags are not deployed.

Advice

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Fasten your seat belt, ensuring it is positioned correctly.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original layout of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the variety of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not attach anything to or hang anything from the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Curtain airbags

Do not attach anything to or hang anything from the roof, as this could cause head injuries if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of the main criteria of CITROËN when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in an approved child seat suited to their weight** and installed on a vehicle seat fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

- i** **CITROËN recommends** that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:
- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
 - **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

* The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Consult the legislation in force in your country.

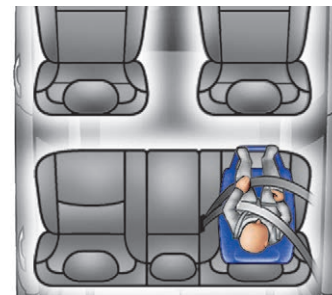
Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

- i** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor.
If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Child seat at the front

(Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.)

"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest upright.

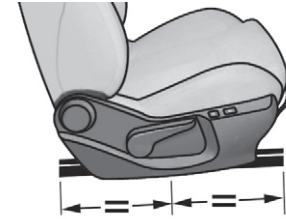
! The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.**

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest upright and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.

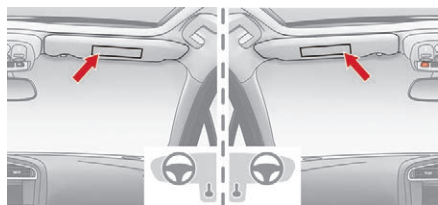
i Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.



Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a "rearward facing" child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

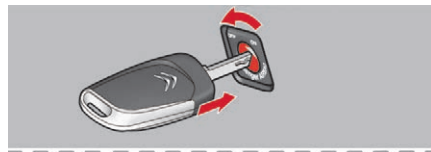


The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.

Passenger airbag OFF



Deactivation



Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- ☞ turn it to the "OFF" position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in this position.



Depending on the version you have, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivating the passenger's front airbag

When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the "ON" position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.



With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

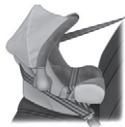
AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلالاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الورا على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مغلقة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumist'ujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNĚHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkää ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSZÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiēt uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalixx tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNAJĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitve lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"
Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 2 and 3: 15-36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"
Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Groups 2 and 3: 15-36 kg






L6

"GRACO Booster"
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat			Weight of the child/indicative age			
			Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	15-25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	22-36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
	Front passenger seat (c)	Fixed	U(R1)	U(R1)	U(R1)	U(R1)
		Height adjustable	U(R2)	U(R2)	U(R2)	U(R2)
	Outer rear seats (d)		U	U	U	U
	Centre rear seat (d)		X	X	X	X

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b) Group 0: birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and car cots cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.
- (c) Refer to the current legislation in your country before putting your child in this seat.

- (d) To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then adjust the backrest to an upright position to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.
- U:** seat suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.
- U(R1):** identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat backrest inclined fully forwards.

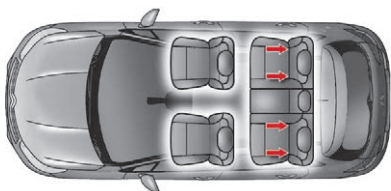
- U(R2):** identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.
- X:** seat not suitable for installing a child seat of the weight group indicated.

i Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulation**.

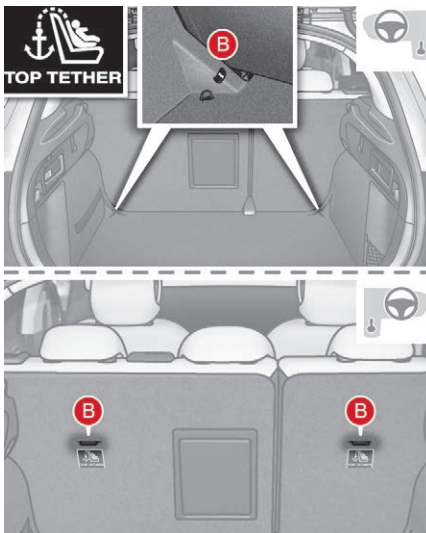
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing the upper strap.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap**, which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- raise the carpet cover to expose the **TOP TETHER**,
- pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

i For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

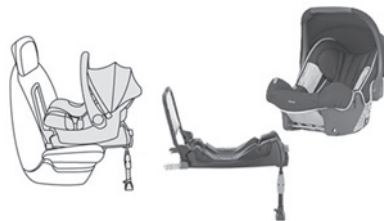
ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

i Also consult the installation notes of the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"
(size category: E)

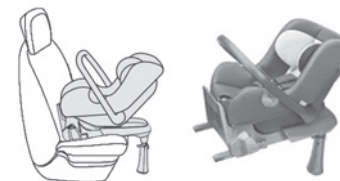
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base attached to rings **A**.
The base has a height-adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"Baby P2C Mini and its ISOFIX base"
(size categories: C, D, E)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.
The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be secured with the seat belt.
In this case only the seat shell is used and is attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.

5

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"
(size category: **B1**)

Group 1: 9-18kg



Installed only in the "forward facing" position.

Attached to the rings **A** and the ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

"Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base"
(size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)

Group 1: 9-18kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be used "forward facing".

This child seat **cannot** be secured with a seat belt.

We recommend that you use the seat in the "rearward facing" position up to the age of 3 years.

Summary table of locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child/indicative age									
	Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	Infant car seat*		"rearward facing"			"rearward facing"		"forward facing"		
ISOFIX size category	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats which can be installed on the outer rear seats	IL-SU**		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF IL-SU		

* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

** The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies all of the space on the rear bench seat.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat which is either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with a top tether or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Check that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat as this could make it unstable.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

In the rear, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a "rearward facing" child seat,
- the feet of a child seated in a "forward facing" child seat.

For this, move the seat forward and, if necessary, straighten its backrest too.

For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, ensure that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Children in the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. CITROËN recommends using a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within the reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Manual child lock



Mechanical system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door.

It is identified by a mark on the bodywork.

Locking



- ☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
 - to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

- ☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
 - to the left on the right-hand rear door.

! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock



Remotely operated system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls.

The control is located on the dashboard, driver's side.

Activation



- ☞ Press this button.
- The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message in the screen. This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off.

5

Deactivation

☞ Press the button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message in the screen.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

i Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time. In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

Comply with the Highway Code and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions. Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality. As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require sustained attention when the vehicle is stationary. On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended. In bad weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

Important!

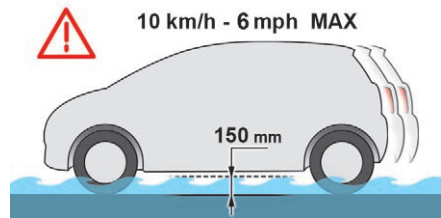
! Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

Do not park and do not run the engine, with vehicle stationary, in areas where combustible substances and materials (dry grass, leaves, etc.) can come into contact with the hot exhaust system – Risks fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive through water:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
 - deactivate the Stop & Start system,
 - drive as slowly as possible without stalling. Under no circumstances exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
 - do not stop and do not switch off the engine.
- On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

i For more information on the **Technical data** of your vehicle and particularly on towed loads, refer to the corresponding section.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant. As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

! New vehicle

Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 600 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

i For more information on **Adjusting the headlamp beam height**, refer to the corresponding section.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a specific code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

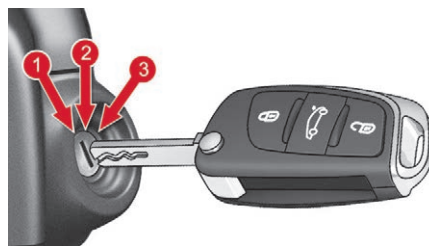
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off, and prevents the engine being started by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and/or the display of a message, depending on version.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Starting/Switching off the engine with the key

Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: inserting and removing the key, steering column locked,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

This permits use of the vehicle's electrical equipment or charging of portable devices. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- ☞ press the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox), or
- ☞ press the brake pedal fully (automatic gearbox),
- ☞ insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- ☞ unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

i In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- ☞ With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- ℹ In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

- ! If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ℹ In temperate conditions, do not let the engine idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

- ! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving away.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine idling, turn the key to position **1**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

- ℹ To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight-ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

- ! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also switched off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

- ℹ When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1 - Stop**), you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc for a maximum combined duration of 30 minutes.

- ℹ For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

Key left in

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

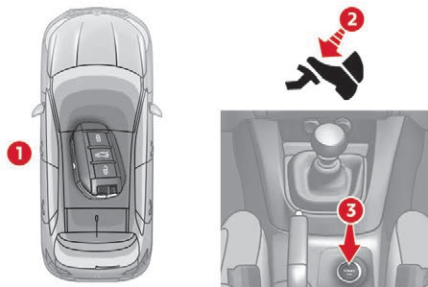
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

Starting the engine

It is not necessary to place the electronic key in the reader.

- ☞ Place the gear selector lever at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.



- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the brake pedal for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or fully press the clutch pedal for vehicles with a manual gearbox.



- ☞ Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.

! Diesel vehicles



In temperatures below zero the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.

If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "**START/STOP**" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

i If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message appears in the instrument panel screen. In some cases, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to help unlock the steering column. The presence of the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key in the recognition zone is essential. As a safety measure, do not leave this zone with the vehicle running.

i If the electronic key is not detected in the recognition zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into the zone so that the engine can be started.

6

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ Place the gear selector lever at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.



☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "START/STOP" button.

The engine stops and the steering column locks.



If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.



Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.



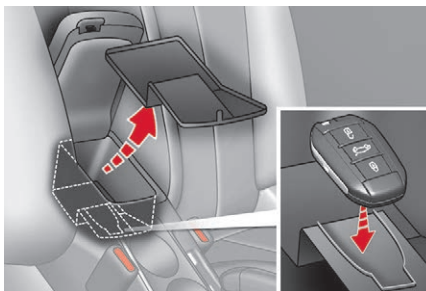
Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Back-up starting

When the electronic key is in the recognition zone and after pressing the "START/STOP" button, if the engine does not start:

☞ Place the gear selector lever at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.

☞ Open the front armrest.



- ☞ Raise the mat by its tongue and remove it.
- ☞ Place the electronic key on the back-up reader.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal on vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or press the clutch pedal fully with a manual gearbox.



☞ Press the "START/STOP" button.
The engine starts.

Back-up switch off



In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions. To do this, press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about three seconds.



In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Electronic key not recognised



If the electronic key is no longer in the recognition zone when driving or when you (later) request switching off of the engine, a message is displayed.



☞ Press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds if you want to force switching off of the engine (**note that restarting will not be possible without the key**).

Ignition on (without starting)

With the Keyless Entry and Starting key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.



- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.



- ☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

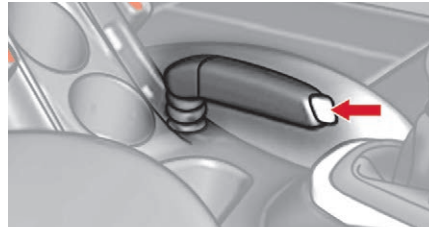
i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode when required to maintain the state of charge of the battery.

Manual parking brake

Application

- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release



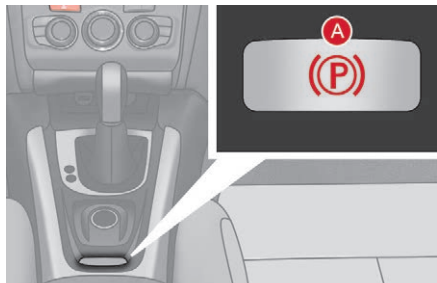
- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.



When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

Electric parking brake



The electric parking brake combines 2 operating modes:

- **Automatic application/release**

Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (activated by default),

- **Manual application/release**

The parking brake can be applied/released manually by pulling control lever **A**.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, the automatic mode is deactivated.

- Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone, etc.) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control lever.

Programming the mode

Depending on the country of sale of the vehicle, the automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.



Activation/deactivation of the system is done in the vehicle configuration menu.



The parking brake is applied and released manually. When the driver's door is opened, a loud beep is heard and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.

! It is recommended that you do not apply the parking brake in very cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan, etc.). Deactivate the automatic functions and release the parking brake manually.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake regardless of whether the engine is running or switched off, **pull** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,

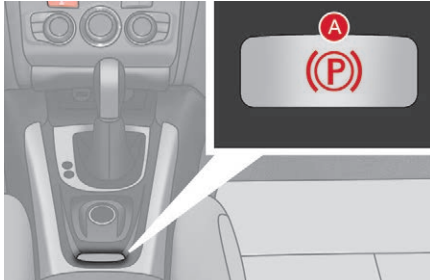


- display of the message "Parking brake applied".

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied, except in the case of an automatic gearbox with the gear selector in position **P**.



! Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.


Manual release



With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** on the **brake pedal** or the accelerator, **pull then release** control lever **A**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

-  - the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,
-  - display of the message "Parking brake off".


 If you pull control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control lever **A**, until you see the message "Parking brake applied fully" accompanied by an audible signal.

Maximum application is essential:



- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on may vary (e.g. on a ferry, on a lorry, during towing).


 In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park. After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.


Automatic application (engine off)

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is applied automatically when the engine is switched off**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

-  - illumination of the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,
-  - display of the message "Parking brake on".

 Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing. Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

 In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when you press the accelerator**:

- ☞ **Manual gearbox**: press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage 1st gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ **Automatic gearbox**: select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,
- display of the message "Parking brake off".



! When stationary with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Parking brake on".

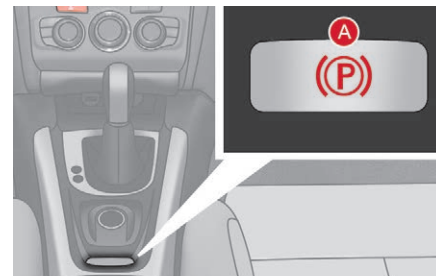
When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied, except in the case of an automatic gearbox with the gear selector in position **P**.

! Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

Special situations

In some circumstances (engine start, etc.), the parking brake may adjust the level of application itself. This is normal operation. To move your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, with the ignition on, press the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** the control lever **A**. Complete release of the parking brake is indicated by the warning lamps in the control lever **A** and in the instrument panel going off and by the display of the message "Parking brake off".

Emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) a continuous pull on the control lever **A** will stop the vehicle.

The electronic stability control provides stability during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake fault" will be displayed.



In the event of failure of the electronic stability control system, signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, braking stability is then not guaranteed.

In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever **A**.

! The emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging of 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

i As a safety precaution and to aid engine start-up:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

Automatic gearbox

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, and the pleasure of manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving and a **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selector module



1. Gear selector.

2. "❄" (**snow**) button.
3. "S" (**sport**) button.
4. Gear selector positions graphic.

Gear selector positions



- P.** Parking.
 - Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
 - Starting the engine.
- R.** Reverse.
 - Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
- N.** Neutral.
 - Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
 - Starting the engine.
- D.** Automatic operation.
- M.+/-** Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

- ☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.
- or
- ☞ Pull backwards to change down through the gears.

Displays on the instrument panel



When you move the selector in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

- P** Parking
- R** Reverse
- N** Neutral
- D** Drive (automatic driving)
- S** **Sport** programme
- ❄** **Snow** programme
- 1 to 6** Gear engaged during manual operation
- Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.

☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, an audible signal is heard, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.

☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.



If you do not press the brake pedal when trying to move the gear selector out of position **P**, this warning lamp or this symbol appears in the instrument panel accompanied by flashing of the **P** symbol, the display of a message and an audible signal.

☞ Check that the display in the instrument panel agrees with the position engaged.

☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The parking brake is released manually, the vehicle moves off immediately.

If the parking brake is on and automatic mode is activated, accelerate progressively.

i If the parking brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are fully closed.

i If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

! When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed. Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** to change the six gears **automatically**.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

- ☞ Press the "S" button after starting the engine.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears on the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

- ☞ With the engine running, press the "❄" button.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and handling when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to auto-adaptive mode

- ☞ At any time, press the selected button again to leave the special programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select the **M** position for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Push the selector towards the "+" sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the selector towards the "-" sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears, and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine is under-revving or over-revving, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed. When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox automatically selects gear 1.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator when changing gear.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time. The sport and snow programmes are inactive in manual operation.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, put the selector in position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

- i** If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.

- ☞ Return the gear selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial jolt when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- !** There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
 - if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

- 🌿** To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), position the gear selector at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine.)

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

Gearshift recommendations should not be considered obligatory. The configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. The driver thus remains responsible for deciding whether to follow or ignore the system's instructions.

This function cannot be deactivated.

- i** With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

- i** On BlueHDi Diesel 150 versions with manual gearbox, in certain driving conditions the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode of Stop & Start). In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

- i** With a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

- i The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).
The system never suggests:
 - engaging first gear,
 - engaging reverse gear,
 - engaging a lower gear.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently. Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode



The "ECO" warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h) or when the vehicle is stationary with the PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi 115 and 120 Diesel versions, when you place the gear lever in neutral and you release the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox**, when the vehicle is stationary and when you press the brake pedal or put the gear selector in position **N**.



If your vehicle is fitted with this system, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

- i The STOP mode does not affect the operation of vehicle systems such as braking, power steering, etc.

- ! Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not activated when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (uphill or downhill),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the "START/STOP" button),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,

- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- certain special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) require the engine to be running to assure control of a system.



In this case, the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode



The "ECO" warning lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** press the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox**:
 - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
 - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
 - or when you engage reverse gear.

i With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully pressing the clutch pedal, a warning lamp comes on or an alert message is displayed asking you to press the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Special cases: START mode activated automatically

As a safety measure or to maintain comfort levels in the vehicle, START mode is activated automatically when:

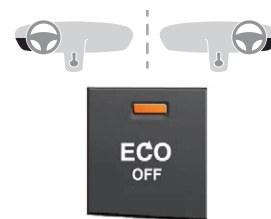
- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (2 mph (3 km/h) with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi 115 and 120 Diesel versions), or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox.
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) require the engine to be running to assure control of a system.



In this case, the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the "ECO OFF" switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch indicator lamp coming on accompanied by the display of a message.

i If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

☞ Press the "ECO OFF" switch again.

The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch indicator lamp going off and the display of a message.

i The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key or the "START/STOP" button.

Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction with the system, the "ECO OFF" switch indicator lamp flashes, then comes on continuously. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps illuminate. Depending on the version, an alert message may also be displayed asking you to put the gear lever into position **N** and your foot on the brake pedal. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart the engine using the key or the "START/STOP" button.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification. All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! **Opening the bonnet**
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



! **Driving on flooded roads**
Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system. For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This system only operates when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

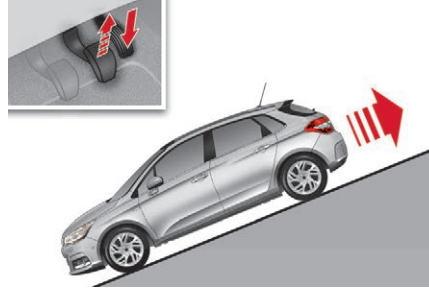
Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:

- if you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox,

- if you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamps light up fixed on the instrument panel.

Malfunction



If a fault occurs with the system, these warning lamps come on. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Memorising speeds

This function allows speeds to be saved, which can then be offered to set the two systems: the speed limiter (to limit the speed of the vehicle) or the cruise control (for a vehicle cruising speed).

You can memorise up to five or six speed settings in the system, depending on version. Default speed settings have already been stored.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify a speed setting when stationary.

With your audio system

Activating the function Changing a speed setting



- ☞ Go to the main menu by pressing the "**MENU**" button.
- ☞ Select the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu and confirm.

- ☞ Select the "**Vehicle settings**" menu and confirm.
- ☞ Select the "**Driving assistance**" line and confirm.
- ☞ Select the "**Memorised speeds**" line and confirm.
- ☞ Select "**Activation**" to activate the function.
- ☞ Select the speed setting to be changed and confirm.
- ☞ Change the value and confirm.
- ☞ Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the changes.

"MEM" button



- ☞ Press this button to display the list of memorised speed settings.

With touch screen



This memorisation can be configured via the vehicle configuration menu.

- ☞ Select the "**Driving functions**" tab.
- ☞ Select the "**Memorised speeds settings**" function.
- ☞ Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings:
- ☞ Select the speed setting value you want to change.
- ☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm and click on "**OK**" to confirm.

! As a safety measure, the driver must carry out these operations when stationary.

"MEM" button



This button allows you to select a speed setting to be used with the speed limiter or cruise control.

Refer to the corresponding section.

Speed limiter



The system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually. The minimum programmed speed is 20 mph (30 km/h).

i The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

! The speed limiter is a driving aid only. It does not exempt the driver from the need to observe speed limits or to remain vigilant at all times.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter mode.

2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Increase the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter on/pause.
5. Display the memorised speed settings.

Displays on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on/off indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selected.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Memorised speed selection.

Switching on



- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "LIMIT" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.



- ☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the speed limit setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To change the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 km/h (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To change the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from your audio system (only with the monochrome screen C):

- ☞ with the system already activated.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Make a long press on button **2** or **3**, the system displays the memorised speed closest to the actual speed of the vehicle; this setting becomes the new limit speed.
- ☞ To choose another value, make another long press on button **2** or **3**.

To change the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ Press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
- ☞ Press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

- ☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.

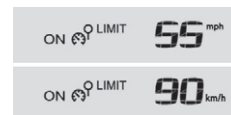
The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.



- ! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver, there is an audible signal to complete the alert.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



Switching off

- Turn the thumbwheel **1** to position **0**: displayed speed limiter information disappears.

Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.
- To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
 - ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
 - never place one mat on top of another.

Cruise control



System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) as well as:

- with a manual gearbox, the engagement of fourth gear or higher,
- with an automatic gearbox, the gear selector at position **D** or second gear or higher in manual mode.

The operation of the cruise control can be momentarily interrupted (paused):

- by pressing the **Pause** control or by pressing the brake or clutch pedals,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

- Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

! The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

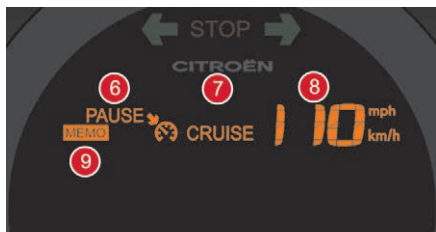
! As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

Steering mounted controls



- Selection of cruise control mode.
- Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lower the cruise setting.
- Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raise the cruise setting.
- Pause/Resume cruise control.
- Display the memorised speed settings.

Displays on the instrument panel

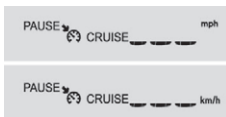


6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.
9. Memorised speed selection.

Switching on



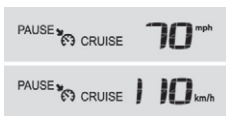
- ☞ Turn the knob **1** to the "CRUISE" position to select cruise control mode.



The function is paused.

- ☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

You can release the accelerator pedal.



- ☞ Pressing button **4** interrupts operation of the system (pause).



- ☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Adjusting the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be activated.

! As a precaution, the selected cruise speed setting should be close to your vehicle's current speed, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To change the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in increments of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), briefly press button **2** or **3** repeatedly,
- ☞ in increments of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Be careful: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

To change the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from your audio system (only with the monochrome screen C):

- ☞ with the system already activated.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ make a long press on button **2** or **3**, the system displays the memorised speed closest to the actual speed of the vehicle; this setting becomes the new cruise speed,
- ☞ to choose another memorised speed, make another long press on button **2** or **3**.

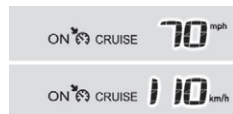
To change the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen tablet:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

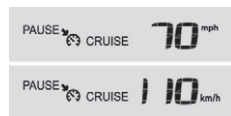
Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

If needed (for overtaking purposes, etc.), the driver can exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal.



The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the speed setting flashes.

To return to the speed setting, simply release the accelerator pedal.



Once the vehicle has returned to the speed setting, the cruise control takes over again: the speed setting is displayed continuously again.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

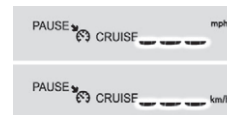
You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.

To reactivate the system, press button **4**.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to position **0**: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Operating fault



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed for a while and at an adequate safe distance. Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow etc.). In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the programmed speed: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb, etc.

! The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never place one mat on top of another.

Lane Departure Warning System



System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)). This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

! The lane departure warning system cannot, in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. It is necessary to observe the Highway Code and to take a break every two hours.

Activation



- ☞ When switching on the ignition or with the engine running, press this button to activate the system; the indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the road has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the road has been crossed on the left.

No warning is given while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (arrow) or non-standard marking (graffiti) is crossed.

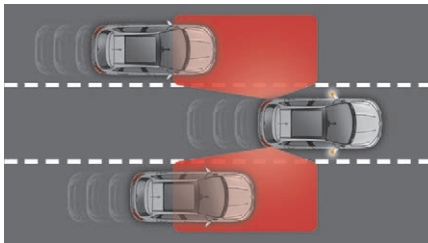
Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- !** Detection may be impeded:
- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow, etc.),
 - if the road markings are not clearly visible,
 - if there is little contrast between the markings on the road and the road surface.

Blind spot monitoring



This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane. The blind spot sensor system can never replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Operation



☞ When switching on the ignition or with the engine running, press this button to activate the system; the indicator lamp comes on.

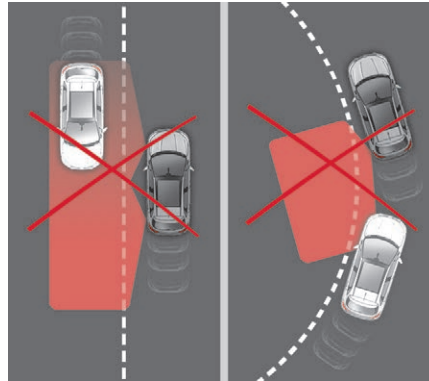
Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, cycle – is detected.

For this, the following conditions must be met:

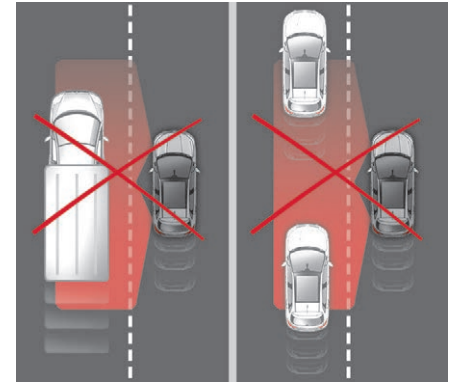
- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 85 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,

- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,



- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is also in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- when overtaking quickly,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.



- To deactivate the system, press this button again; the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

- The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

Operating fault

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

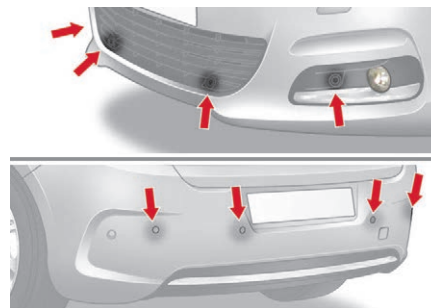
- The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) entering the detection range of the sensors located in the bumper.

Certain types of obstacle (post, roadworks cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' detection range.

- !** This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

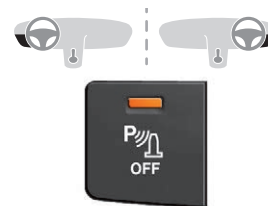
Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation/activation of the front and rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The button indicator lamp comes on. Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The button indicator lamp goes off.

i The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Operating fault

SERVICE

In the event of a system fault when engaging the reverse gear, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep). Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

Tyre under-inflation detection



System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving. The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving. A pressure sensor is located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel). The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey. Driving with under-inflated tyres worsens road-holding, lengthens braking distances, causes premature wear of the tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label. Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label. For more information on the **Identification markings**, including the tyre pressure label, refer to the corresponding section.

Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by continuous illumination of the lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, depending on equipment, to identify it.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.



The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor (such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit) check the pressures of the four tyres when cold. If it is not possible to carry out this check straight away, drive carefully at reduced speed.
or
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).



The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.
The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

Operating fault



SERVICE

The flashing and then constant illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the service warning lamp indicates a fault in the system.

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.



This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (for example, a space-saver or steel spare wheel).



Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.



Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (fitting snow tyres for example), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN prefers **TOTAL**



FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ
LUBRICANTS



For more than 45 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products during motorsport races in extreme conditions.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants to maintain your vehicle, this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.

Fuel

Tank capacity: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached in the tank, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and the display of an alert message. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel is left in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, every time the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp appears, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message. When driving, this audible signal and alert message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the level drops towards **0**.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer to the corresponding section.

Refuelling

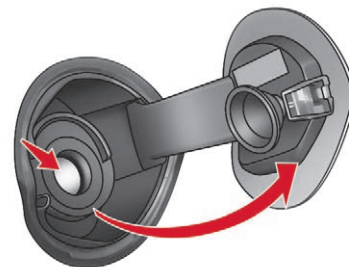
Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key, or the "START/STOP" button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.



- ☞ Press this button until the automatic opening of the fuel flap is heard. This control remains active for a few minutes after switching off the ignition. If necessary, switch the ignition on again to reactivate it.
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct type of fuel for your vehicle.



- ☞ Insert the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap.
- ☞ Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Hold it in this position throughout the filling operation.
- ☞ Push the fuel flap to close it.

If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the third cut-off; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be introduced.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Fuel cut-off

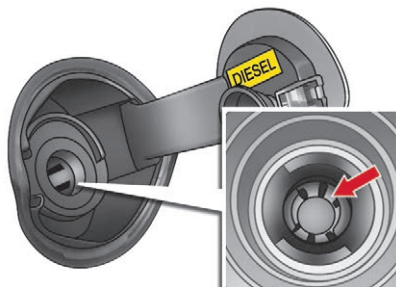
Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on the country of sale.)
Mechanical device which prevents filling of the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is inserted into your Diesel tank, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling. **Do not persist but insert a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

i You can still use a fuel can to fill the tank. In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

i **Travelling abroad**
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with a CITROËN dealer, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards which can be obtained from filling stations:

- E5** Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.
- E10**

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

- B7** Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



- B10** Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

- XTL** Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

- B20** B20 or B30 fuel that meets the standard EN16709 can be used with your Diesel engine. However, the use of this fuel, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".
- B30**

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type diesel fuels could entail an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

Travelling abroad

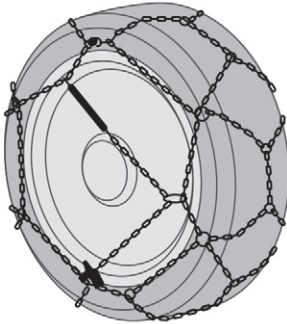
Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact a dealer.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.



! The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Advice on installation

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and, if necessary, put wheel chocks against the wheels to prevent your vehicle from sliding.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few seconds, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixtures is in contact with the wheel rim.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
195/65 R15	9 mm
205/55 R16	
225/45 R17	
225/40 R18	cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Very cold climate screen

(Depending on the country of sale.)

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

Fitting

- ☞ Position the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

Removing

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip.

! The very cold climate screen must be removed when:

- the exterior temperature exceeds 10°C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

i We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care. For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

! Observe the maximum authorised towed weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

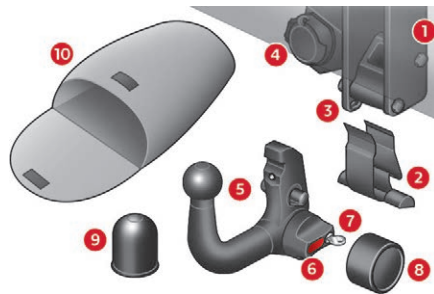
Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (ball joint) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

The maximum authorised nose weight does not depend on the type of device installed, fixed or removable, with or without a tool.

Towbar with quickly detachable towball

Presentation

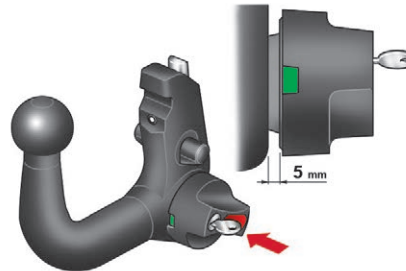
This towbar allows the towball to be fitted and removed quickly and easily without the use of tools. Installed behind the bumper, the device is invisible after the towball has been removed and the trailer harness carrier has been folded away.



1. Carrier.
2. Protective plug.
3. Safety eye.
4. Folding trailer harness socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking/unlocking wheel.
7. Key-operated safety lock.
8. Locking wheel protector.

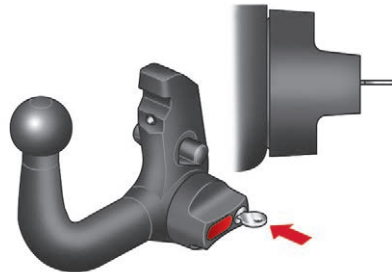
9. Ball protector.
10. Stowing bag.

A. Locked position



The locking wheel is not in contact with the towball (gap of about 5 mm).
The green mark is visible.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing rearward.

B. Unlocked position



The locking wheel is in contact with the towball.
The green mark is hidden.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing forward.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

i For information on the maximum trailer weight and the recommended nose weight, refer to the Technical Data section. For more information on **Towing a trailer**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted, verifying that:

- the towball is correctly engaged (position **A**),
- the security lock is closed and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by shaking it with your hand.

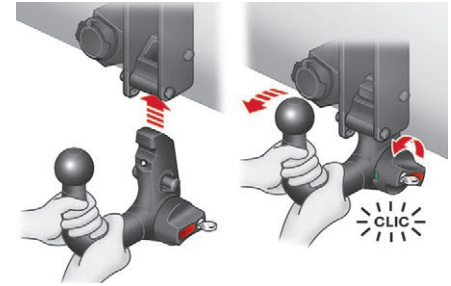
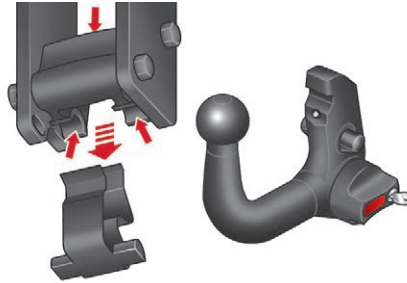
i During use

Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball.
Never exceed the gross train weight (GTW) for the vehicle.
Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.
For more information on adjusting the headlamp beam height, refer to the corresponding section.

i After use

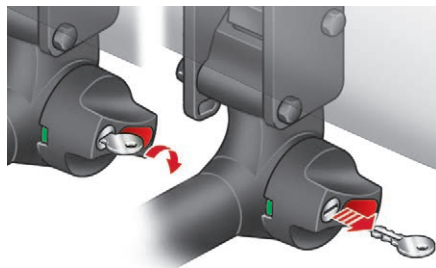
For journeys made without a trailer or load carrier, the trailer socket must be folded away, the towball removed and the protective plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly if the towball could hinder visibility of the number plate or lighting.

Fitting the towball



- ☞ Remove the protective plug from the carrier and check the condition of the fixing system. If necessary, clean the carrier with a brush or clean cloth.
- ☞ Take the towball from the storage bag.
- ☞ Remove the protective cover from the ball and the protective cap from the locking wheel.
- ☞ Stow the plug, cover and cap in the storage bag.
- ☞ Check that the towball is unlocked (position **B**). If not, insert the key in the lock and turn the key anti-clockwise to unlock the mechanism.

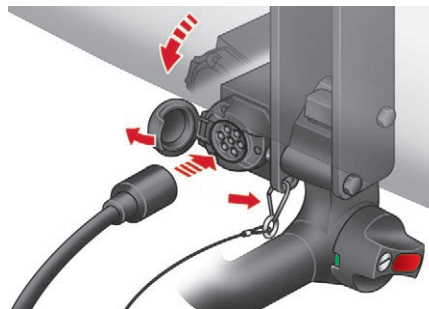
- ☞ Take the towball in both hands; insert the end of the towball into the carrier by lifting it, then, to ensure that it has correctly locked in place, pull firmly down on the ball end of the towball.
The locking wheel then automatically turns anti-clockwise, making a perceptible "click"; take care to keep your hands clear.
- ☞ Check that the towball has correctly locked in place (position **A**).



- ☞ Turn the key clockwise to lock the towball fixing mechanism.
- ☞ Always remove the key and keep it in a safe place.

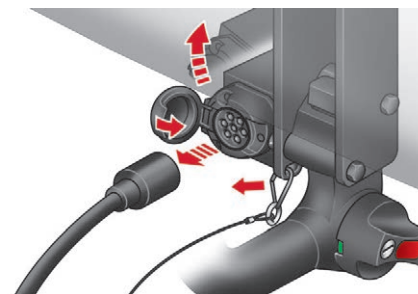
! If the key cannot be turned or removed, this means that the towball is not fitted correctly; start the procedure again. If any locking step fails, start the procedure again. In all cases, if the marking remains red, do not use the towbar and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ☞ Attach the trailer to the towball.



- ☞ Attach the cable on the trailer to the safety ring located on the carrier.
- ☞ Lower the trailer harness socket carrier by pulling down on the ring visible below the bumper.
- ☞ Raise the protective cover on the socket and connect the trailer wiring harness.

Removing the towball

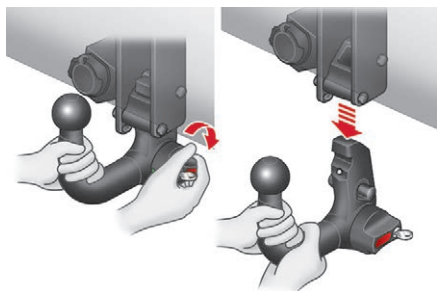


- ☞ Disconnect the trailer wiring harness from the socket on the carrier.
- ☞ Detach the cable on the trailer from the safety ring on the carrier.
- ☞ Detach the trailer from the towball.
- ☞ Return the trailer harness connector carrier to the folded position.

Practical information

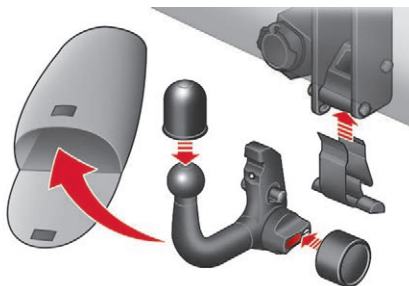


- ☞ Insert the key into the lock.
- ☞ Turn the key anti-clockwise to unlock the towball fixing mechanism.



- ☞ Grasp the towball firmly with one hand; with the other hand, press and turn the locking wheel clockwise as far as it will go.
- ☞ Extract the towball downward.

! Be ready for the weight of the towball (around 3.5 kg). Risk of injury!



- ☞ Refit the protective cover for the ball and the protective cover for the locking wheel.
- ☞ Stow the towball in its bag.
- ☞ Refit the protective blanking plug to the carrier.

! Remove the quickly detachable towball when not towing a trailer.

! The active lane departure warning function will be deactivated when the trailer is connected to the vehicle.

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean. Before cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, the towbar harness socket carrier must be folded away, the towball removed and the blanking plug inserted in the carrier.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towbar system.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy saving mode

System that manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio equipment, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined period of thirty minutes.

i This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to this mode

Once this period has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to the energy saving mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is progress via the touch screen at this time, the connection will be interrupted after 10 minutes.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

⚠ In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

The time available to you will then be double the period for which the engine is left running. However, this period will always be between five and thirty minutes.

! The engine will not start if the battery is discharged.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Audio system pre-equipment

Your vehicle is equipped with certain audio system pre-equipment:

- a dual-function aerial at the rear of the roof,
- a coaxial aerial cable,
- basic interference suppression,
- cabling for speakers in the front doors and tweeters in the dashboard,
- cabling for speakers in the rear doors
- two 8-way connectors.

Before installing a radio unit or speakers in your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain a suitable wiring harness.

Fitting an audio system



The audio system is fitted in place of the storage compartment located above the heating and air conditioning control panel.

☞ Unclip the storage compartment on each side using a screwdriver, and pull it out.

You will then have access to an aerial coaxial cable and two 8-way connectors.

Next, refer to the instructions provided with your audio system.

Fitting speakers

It is possible to fit:

- 165 mm diameter speakers in the front doors,
- 130 mm diameter speakers in the rear doors,
- 22.5 mm diameter tweeters in the top of the dashboard.

Connectors wiring

8-way connector (A)

- A1:** -
- A2:** -
- A3:** -
- A4:** -
- A5:** -
- A6:** (+) With ignition on (in this case, the audio equipment only operates when the ignition is on)
- A7:** (+) Permanent
- A8:** Earth

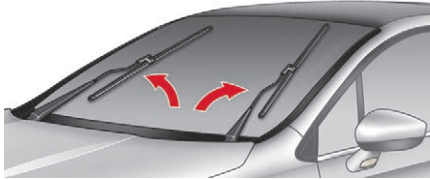
8-way connector (B)

- B1:** (+) Rear right speaker
- B2:** (-) Rear right speaker
- B3:** (+) Front right speaker and tweeter
- B4:** (-) Front right speaker and tweeter
- B5:** (+) Front left speaker and tweeter
- B6:** (-) Front left speaker and tweeter
- B7:** (+) Rear left speaker
- B8:** (-) Rear left speaker

! Never use a separate wire to connect the (+) of your audio equipment (risk of discharging of the battery).

Changing a wiper blade

Before removing a windscreen wiper



- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades in the middle of the windscreen (maintenance position).

Removing

- ☞ Lift the corresponding wiper arm away from the windscreen.
- ☞ Unclip and remove the wiper blade.

Fitting

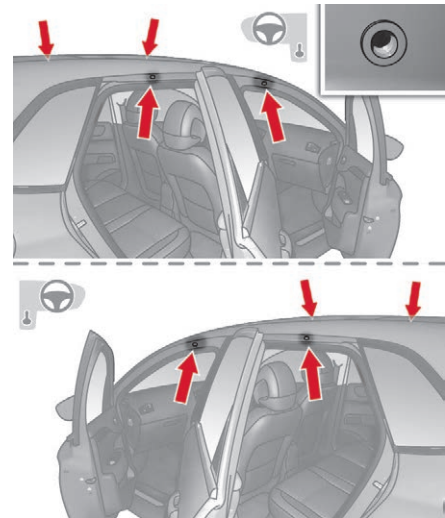
- ☞ Position and clip the new wiper blade to the arm.
- ☞ Carefully lower the wiper arm.

After reassembling a windscreen wiper

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

Fitting roof bars

- !** As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle. Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use in the guide supplied with the bars.




7

Practical information

When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located in the roof frame. The points are hidden by the vehicle doors when closed. The roof bar mountings include a stud to be fitted to the hole at each fixing point.

- Maximum authorised load distributed over the roof bars, for a load height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers):
 - for roof bars with **90 mm** pads: **50 kg**,
 - for roof bars with **150 mm** pads: **80 kg**.For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the mountings on the vehicle. Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

Bonnet

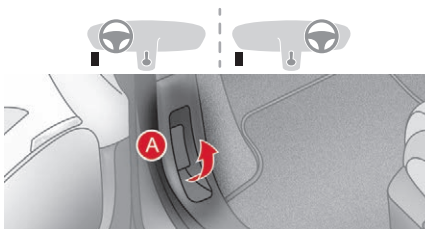
!  **STOP & START SYSTEM**

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

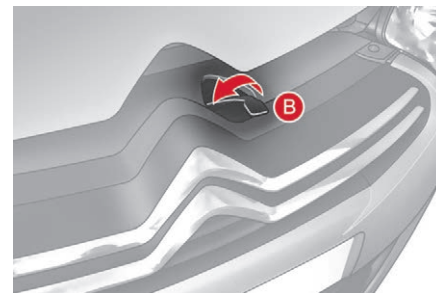
- !** **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

Opening

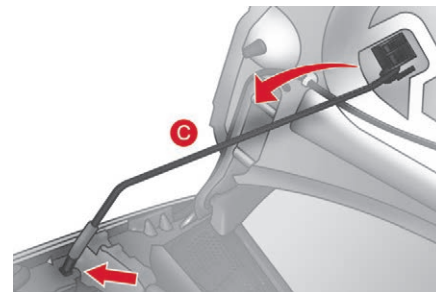
- ☞ Open the left-hand front door.



- ☞ Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.



- ☞ Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- ☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

! Do not open the bonnet when there is a very strong wind. When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns).

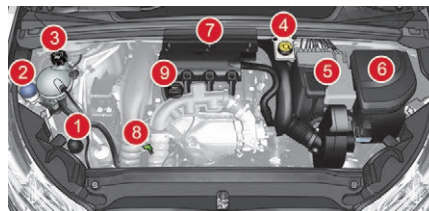
Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

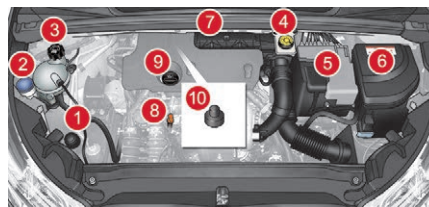
! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engines

Petrol



Diesel



These engines are examples provided as a guide.

The positions of the following elements may change:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*

! The diesel circuit is under very high pressure. All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on engine.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground. Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of in the containers reserved for this purpose.

Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

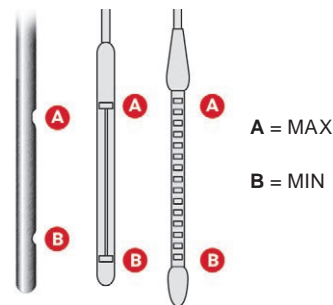
i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

- ☞ Locate the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

For more information about the petrol or Diesel engine, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the ignition-triggered oil level indicator in the instrument panel does not provide valid information until 30 minutes have elapsed.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for interval details for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Draining the circuit

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering fluid level



The fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. Verify this, with the engine off, by reading the level on the filler neck.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine cool.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it. If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, place a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Fluid specification

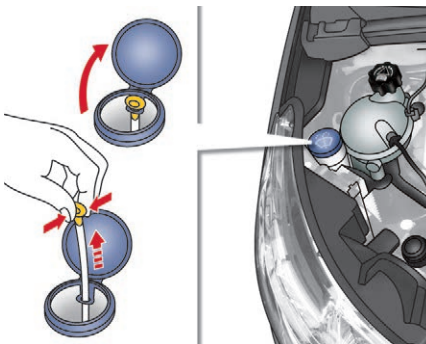
This brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash/headlamp wash level



To check the level or top up the fluid on vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, immobilise the vehicle and switch off the engine.

- ☞ Open the bonnet and secure it with the stay.



- ☞ Open the screenwash reservoir filler cap.
- ☞ Take and pinch the level gauge to block its breather.
- ☞ Remove the gauge completely from the reservoir to read the level in the transparent section.
- ☞ Top up if necessary.
- ☞ Refit the filler cap to the reservoir and close the bonnet.

Fluid specifications

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up or replaced with plain water.

In wintry conditions, using an ethyl alcohol or methanol based fluid is recommended.

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

SERVICE The additive tank minimum level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

SERVICE

The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by an alert message.

i As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any particular checks. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

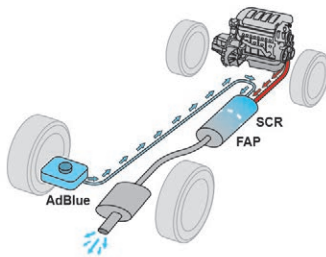
! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the new Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the oxides of nitrogen (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in a special tank holding about 17 litres. Its capacity offers a driving range of around 12,500 miles (20,000 km) before triggering an alert system that warns you when you can drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km).

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage between two services is greater than 12,500 miles (20,000 km), it will be necessary to top up the AdBlue®.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

i Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Topping up with AdBlue®

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top up the AdBlue® between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement.

You can go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If you envisage topping up yourself, please read the following recommendations and warnings carefully.

Precautions for use

The AdBlue® solution is based on urea. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).

Practical information

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high exterior temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be ruled out: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children, in its original container or bottle. Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.



Use only AdBlue® liquid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute AdBlue® with water. Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

Containers are available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes below around -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles or containers be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept

for at least a year.

If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at exterior temperature.

! Never store bottles or containers of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

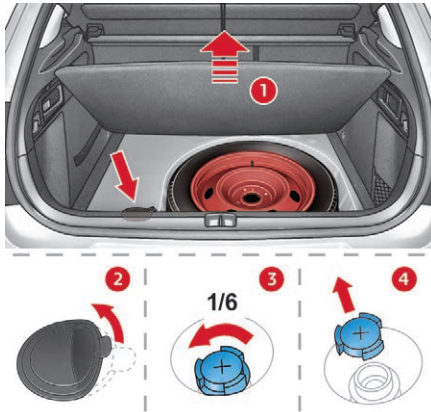


Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container provided for this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Procedure

Before topping up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface. In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may freeze and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key, or if your vehicle has one, press the START/STOP button to switch off the engine.



- ☞ Raise the boot floor for access to the AdBlue® tank. Secure the boot floor by attaching its cord to the hook on the parcel shelf support.
- ☞ Unclip the black plastic blanking plug using its tab.
- ☞ Turn the blue cap 1/6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Lift off the cap.



- ☞ Obtain a bottle or can of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle or can into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! **Important:** if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine – you must add at least 4 litres.

- ☞ After emptying the bottle or can, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any AdBlue® additive is spilt or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the AdBlue® has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it 1/6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Refit the black plastic blanking plug, clipping it in on the flap.
- ☞ Refit the boot carpet and close the tailgate.

! **Important: in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, inserting the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment.**

Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

In the event of a breakdown

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit comprises a compressor and a sealant cartridge.

It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.

You are then able to go to the nearest garage.

- It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder. Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle's electrical system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.

Only the 12 V socket for the **rear passengers** of the vehicle allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair or inflate the vehicle's tyre. The 12V sockets located at the front of the vehicle and in the boot are not designed to be used with the compressor.

Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

Composition of the kit



- 12 V compressor, with built-in pressure gauge.
- Bottle of sealant, with built-in hose.
- Speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

! Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

! Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

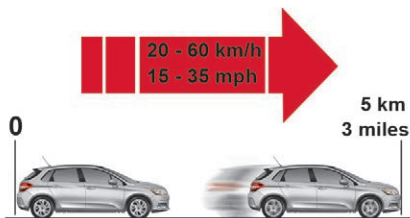
In the event of a breakdown



- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to the position "I" until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the hose from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

! If after around five to seven minutes the pressure of 2 bars is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit.



- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date is marked on the bottle. After use, do not discard the bottle by the roadside, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Don't forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

i You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.

Spare wheel

Procedure for replacing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel, using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools

The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access:

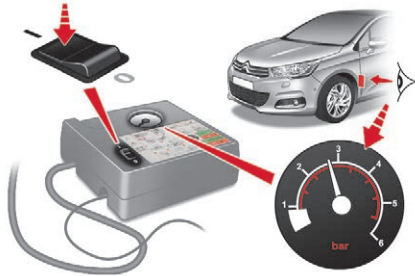
- ☞ open the boot,



- ☞ raise the floor,
 - ☞ secure it by hooking its cord onto the hook on the shelf support,
 - ☞ with a standard size spare wheel, unclip and remove the box containing the tools, located in the middle of the wheel,
- or



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to the position "I" and adjust the pressure as shown on the vehicle tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button on the compressor hose by the valve connector.

- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, move the switch to the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ with a "space-saver" spare wheel, lift the wheel at the rear towards you for access to the storage box containing the tools.

List of tools



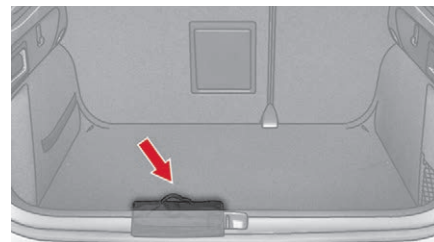
1. Wheelbrace.
For removing the hub cap and removing the wheel bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover removal tool.
For removing the wheel bolt head protectors on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

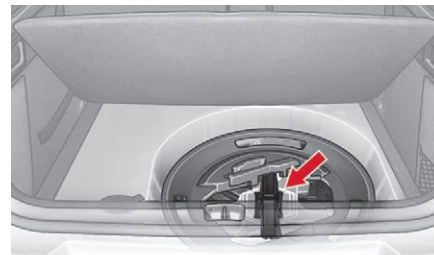
i The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack provided for it by the manufacturer.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

i **Wheel with trim**
When removing the wheel, first remove the trim using the wheelbrace **1** by pulling at the valve aperture.
When refitting the wheel, refit the trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

With BlueHDi Diesel



If your vehicle has an **electric parking brake**, the jack is stowed in a bag placed in the boot.



If your vehicle has a **manual parking brake**, the jack is stowed under the spare wheel and under the storage box:
☞ remove the "space-saver" type spare wheel,
☞ remove the polystyrene storage box,
☞ push the jack forward, then lift it by its rear part.

Access to the spare wheel

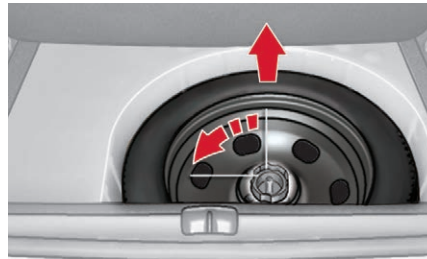


The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel; for some countries of sale, it is the "space saver" type. For access to the spare wheel, first refer to "Access to the tools" in this section.

i If your vehicle has an electric parking brake, only a "space saver" type of wheel can be stowed in the boot.

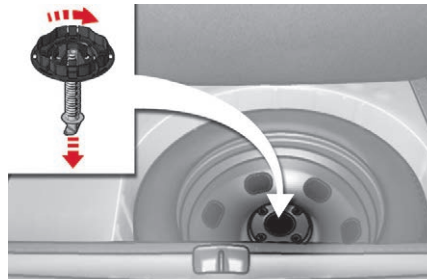
Taking out the standard wheel



- ☞ Loosen the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the standard wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.



- ☞ Unscrew the central nut on the bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.

i Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a breakdown

Removing a wheel



! Parking the vehicle

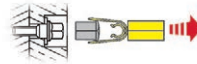
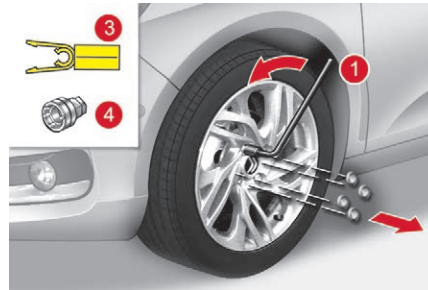
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and engage first gear (position **P** for the automatic gearbox) to lock the wheels.

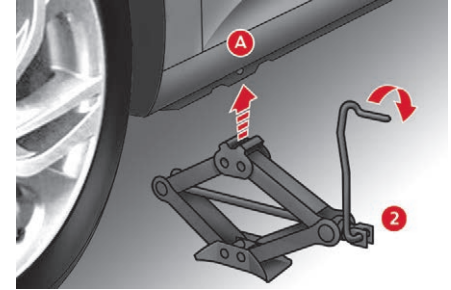
Check that the parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel come on. The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe. If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

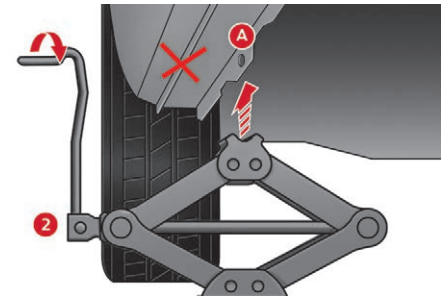
List of operations



- ☞ Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Fit the security socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- ☞ Place the foot of the jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be correctly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.

- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop – Risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack only at one of the jacking points, **A** or **B**, under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area of the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping – Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.

i The jack does not require any maintenance.

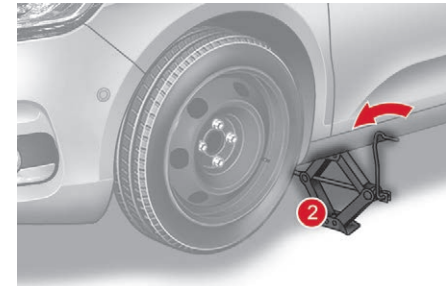
i The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

List of operations

- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.

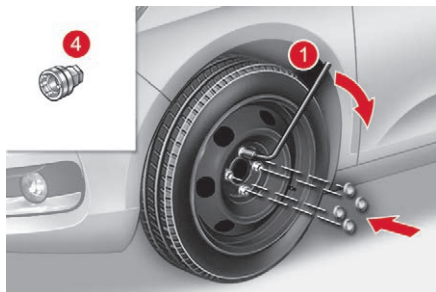


- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 4.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace 1 only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle fully.
- ☞ Fold the jack 2 and detach it.

In the event of a breakdown



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **1** only.
- ☞ Refit the bolt covers to the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools in the box.

i Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

After changing a wheel

Put the punctured wheel in the boot or, depending on version, remove the central cover first to store it beneath the floor in place of the spare wheel.

! With a "space-saver" type spare wheel
It is recommended that you do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

! Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! A bulb should only be changed with the ignition off and after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes – Risk of serious burns!

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a faulty bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification.

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

i For bulbs with lugs, type H1, H7, etc. take care to position them correctly to ensure the best lighting.

! Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S) must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

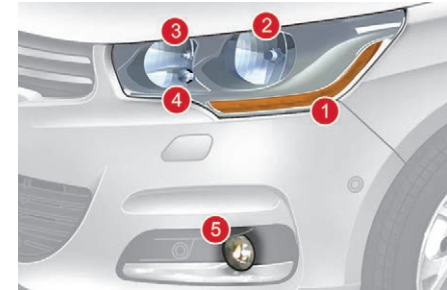
Front lamps

With xenon and directional headlamps



1. Directional dipped/main beam headlamps (D1S).
2. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
3. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (P21/5W XL).
4. Foglamps (H11).

With halogen headlamps (type 1)



1. Direction indicators (H21 clear).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
3. Main beam headlamps (H1).
4. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (P21/5W XL).
5. Foglamps (H11).

In the event of a breakdown

With halogen headlamps and LED light signature (type 2)

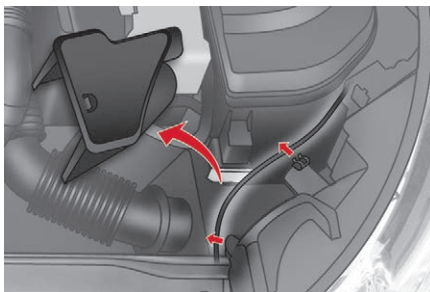
(LED: light-emitting diodes.)



1. Direction indicators (LED).
2. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LEDs).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
4. Main beam headlamps (H7).
5. Foglamps (H11).

Access to bulbs

Depending on the engine and only on the left hand side, you must first carry out the following operations for access to the protective covers on the bulbs.



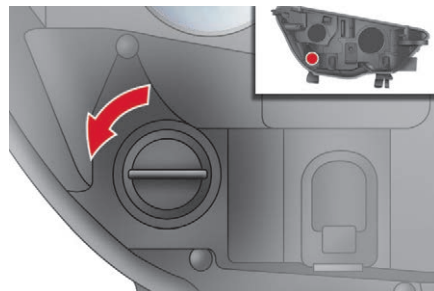
- ☞ Remove the air deflector by unclipping each of its three attachment points.
- ☞ Unclip the bonnet release cable at its two fixings.
- ☞ Move the cable down.

After changing the faulty bulb, remember to put everything back in place (cable and air deflector).

Direction indicators

- i** Quicker flashing of the direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

Model with halogen headlamps (type 1)



- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

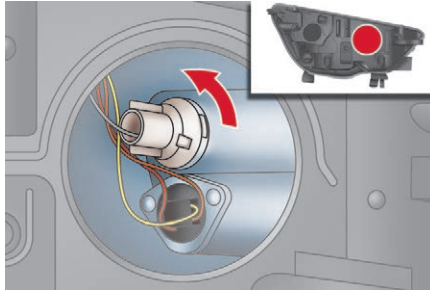
Model with halogen headlamps (type 2)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Model with xenon headlamps

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.



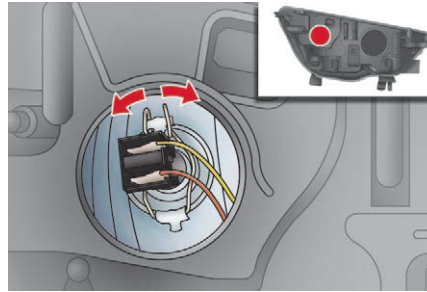
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it.
 - ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter turn and change it.
- For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i Amber colour bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs of identical colour and specifications.

! When refitting, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the headlamp.

Dipped beam headlamp bulbs (with halogen headlamps)

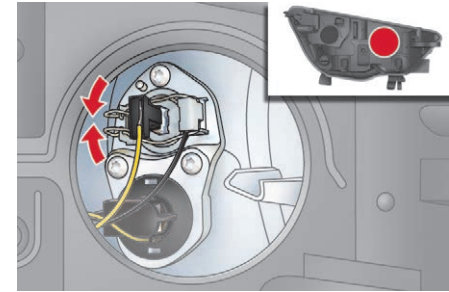
- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.



- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
 - ☞ Spread the springs to release the bulb.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Main beam headlamp bulbs (with halogen headlamps type 1)

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.

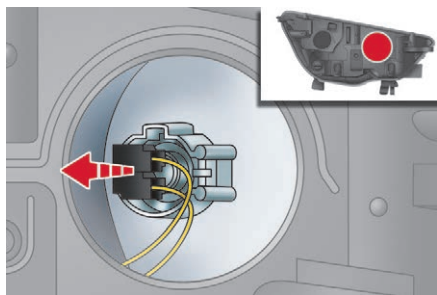


- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
 - ☞ Squeeze the springs to release the bulb.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

In the event of a breakdown

Main beam headlamp bulbs (with halogen headlamps type 2)

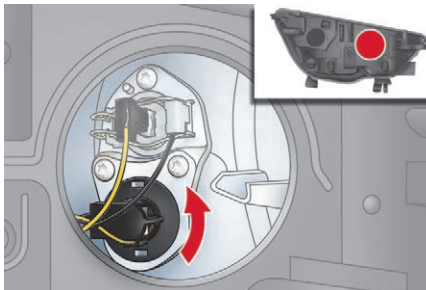
- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.



- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Daytime running lamp/sidelamp bulbs (on models with xenon or type 1 halogen headlamps)

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.



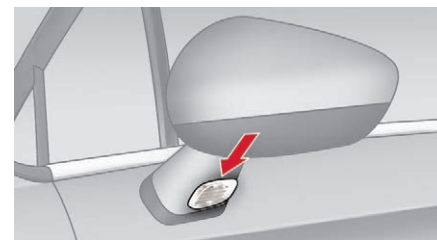
- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
 - ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Daytime running lamp/sidelamp bulbs (with type 2 halogen headlamps)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters

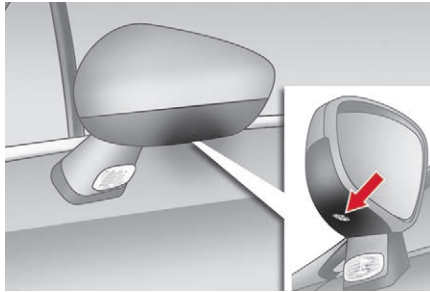


- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- ☞ Tilt the flat screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector from the repeater.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain replacement repeaters.

Side spotlamps (LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Foglamps



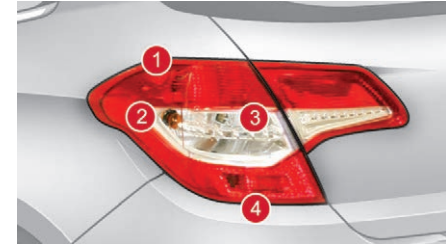
- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver in the hole in the finisher.
- ☞ Pull and lever to unclip the bumper finisher (the parking sensor stays with the finisher).
- ☞ Remove the two fastening screws of the module and remove it from its housing.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps

With conventional lamps (type 1)

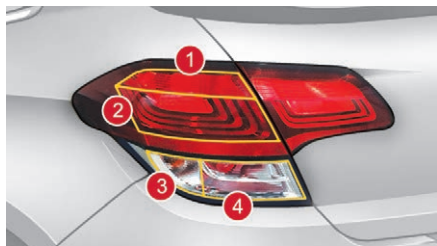


1. Brake lamps/sidelamps (P21/5W).
2. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
3. Reversing lamps (P21W).
4. Foglamps (P21W).

i Amber colour bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs of identical colour and specifications. The lamps on the tailgate are dummy units. They are purely cosmetic.

In the event of a breakdown

With 3D lamps (type 2)



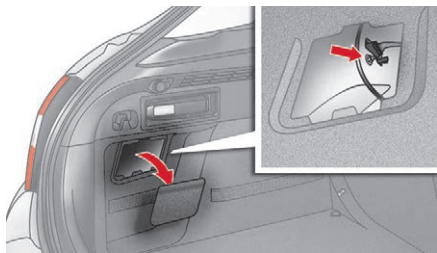
1. Brake lamps (P21W).
2. Sidelamps (R10W).
3. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
4. Foglamp or reversing lamp (P21W).

Access to rear lamps

You will need a flat screwdriver and a 10 mm box spanner.

The four bulbs are changed from outside the boot:

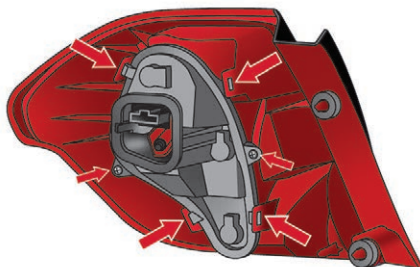
- ☞ open the boot,



- ☞ remove the access flap on the corresponding side trim,
- ☞ unclip the lamp unit connector,
- ☞ as a precaution, place a cloth in the bottom of the housing to catch the nut if it is dropped on removal,
- ☞ slacken the hexagonal nut using a box spanner, then unscrew it by hand,
- ☞ carefully remove the lamp unit by pulling it straight outwards.

Rear lamp bulbs (type 1)

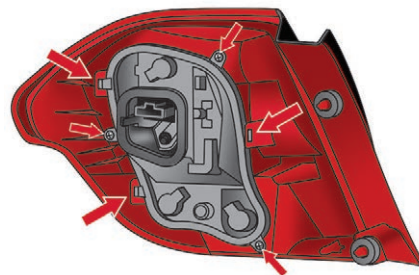
After removing the lamp unit, carry out the following operations to replace the faulty bulb:



- ☞ remove the two bulb holder fixing screws,
- ☞ spread the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter turn and change it.

Rear lamp bulbs (type 2)

After removing the lamp unit, carry out the following operations to replace the failed bulb:

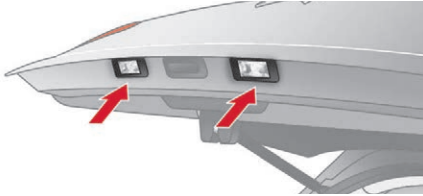


- ☞ remove the three bulb holder fixing screws,
- ☞ spread the three tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter turn and change it.

To reassemble, proceed in reverse order.

! Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle. Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without forcing, so as to avoid damaging the lamp unit.

Number plate lamps (W5W)

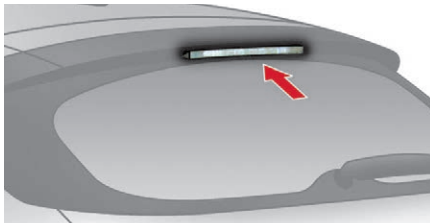


To facilitate removal, perform this procedure with the tailgate half open.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the cut-out outside the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press the lens to clip it in.

High mount stop lamp (LED)



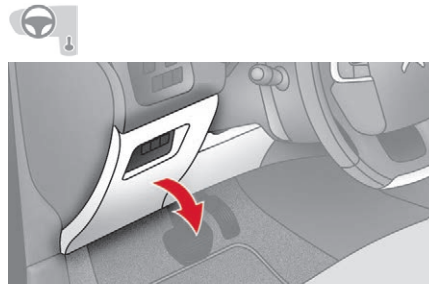
For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing a fuse Access to the tools



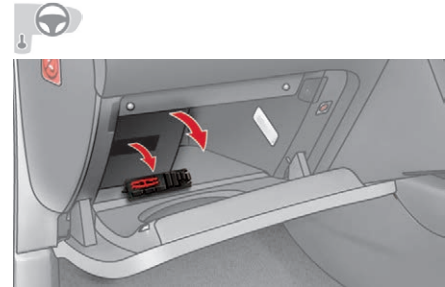
The extraction tweezers are attached to the back of the dashboard or glove box fusebox cover.

Dashboard



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- ☞ Remove the carrier on which the tweezers are fitted.

Glove box



- ☞ Open the glove box lid.
- ☞ Unclip the fusebox cover by pulling at top right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- ☞ Remove the carrier on which the tweezers are fitted.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the faulty fuse using the allocation tables and the diagrams given in the following pages.

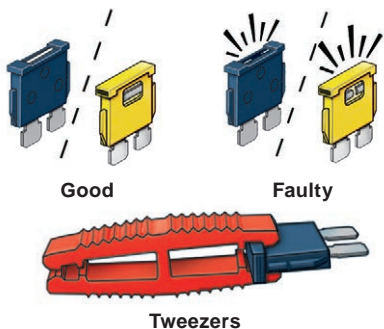
In the event of a breakdown

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- ☞ always replace the defective fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause a fault (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables opposite may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



i Installing electrical accessories

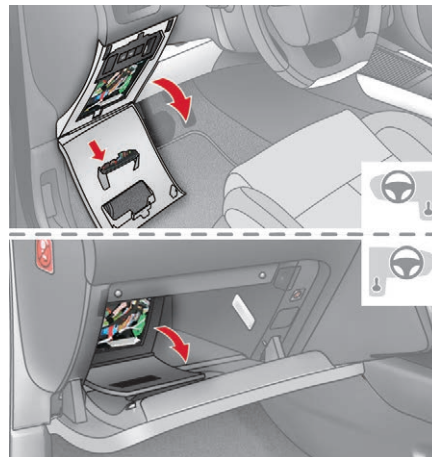
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

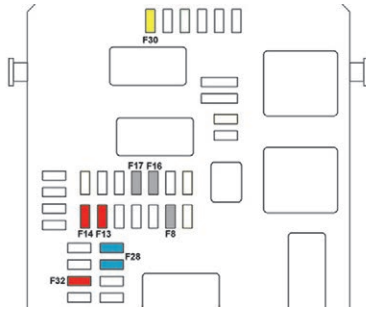
Dashboard fuses

Access to the fuses



The fuseboxes are located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

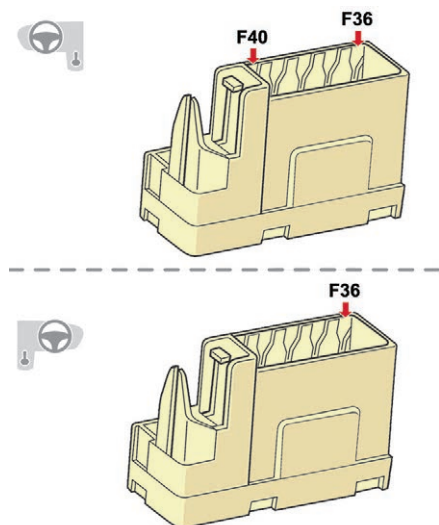
Box 1



Fuse No.	Rating	Functions
F8	3 A	Alarm siren, alarm control unit.
F13	10 A	Front 12 V socket.
F14	10 A	12 V socket in boot.
F16	3 A	Rear map reading lamps, glove box illumination.
F17	3 A	Sun visor illumination, front map reading lamps.
F28	15 A	Audio system, audio system (after-market).
F30	20 A	Rear wiper.
F32	10 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.

In the event of a breakdown

Box 2



Fuse No.	Rating	Functions
F36	15 A	Rear 12 V socket.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	25 A	230 V/50 Hz socket (depending on country of sale).

Engine compartment fuses



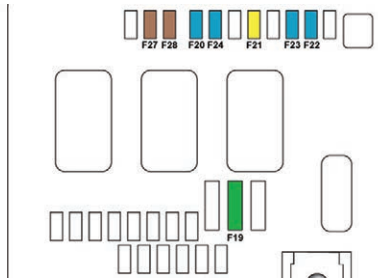
The fusebox is located in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.

For information on the special requirements and precautions to take before changing a fuse, refer to the start of this section.

- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover very carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse No.	Rating	Functions
F19	30 A	Windscreen wipers slow/fast speed.
F20	15 A	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F21	20 A	Headlamp wash pump.
F22	15 A	Horn.
F23	15 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	15 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F27	5 A	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F28	5 A	Right-hand dipped headlamp.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



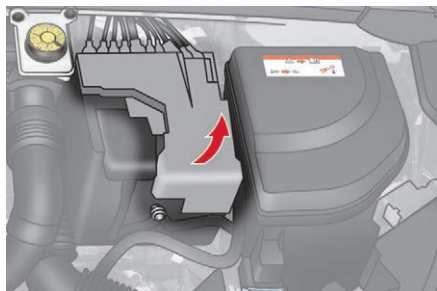
Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior lever,
- ☞ raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay,



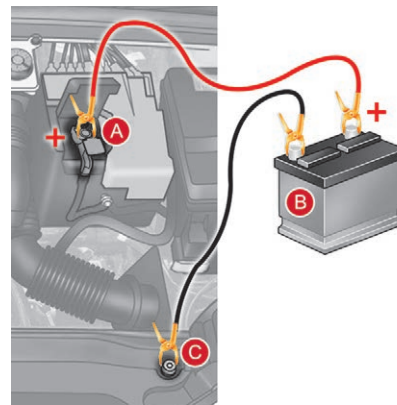
- ☞ lift the plastic cover for access to the (+) terminal.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.

! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.

- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.



- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

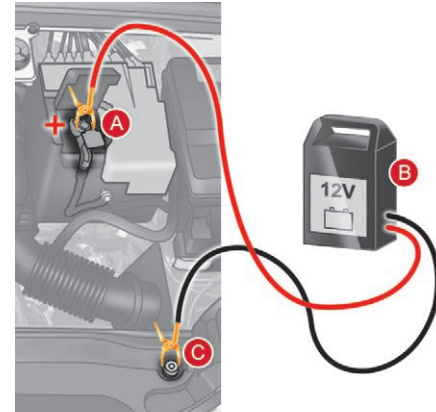
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you wish to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

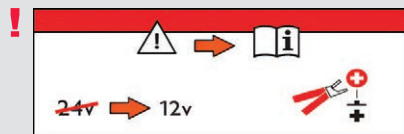
! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the cables of the charger **B** as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Disconnecting the battery

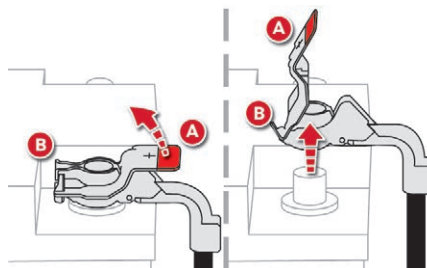
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all accesses (doors, boot, windows, roof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

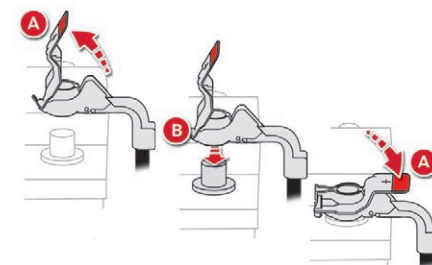
At the battery, detach the (+) terminal only.

Quick-release terminal clamp Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will be impossible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise (depending on version):

- the remote control key,
- the electric blind(s),
- the one-touch electric windows,
- the date and time,
- etc.

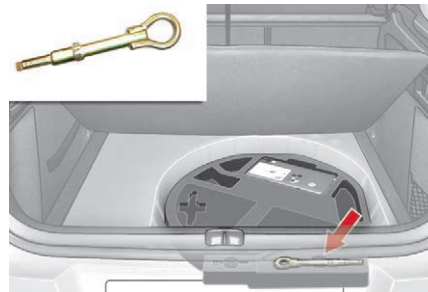
! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start. In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To access it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear shelf support,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is greater than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently. When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer any braking or steering assistance.

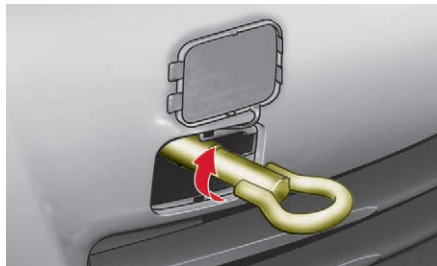
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar available etc.

In the event of a breakdown

Towing your vehicle

- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.



- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Move the gear lever into neutral (position **N** for an automatic gearbox).

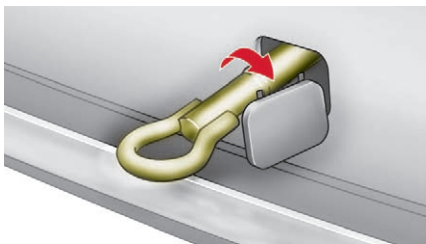
! Failure to follow this instruction may cause damage to some components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance when the engine is restarted.

- ☞ Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.

- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.



- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with a diesel engine, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

i For more information on **Diesel misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

Other HDi engines

(Except BlueHDi version)

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- ☞ Open the engine bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the style cover to access the priming pump.



- ☞ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Put the style cover in place and clip it in.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine technical data are indicated in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle are indicated in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW values and the towed loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres. The recommended nose weight is the vertical load on the towbar ball (removable, with or without tools).

GTW: Gross train weight.

! High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 60 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

Petrol engines and towed loads

Petrol engine	PureTech 110	VTi 120	PureTech 130 S&S	
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed (ETG5)	Manual 5-speed (ETG5)	Manual 6-speed (ETG6)	Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)
Model codes: NC...	HNZ6 HNZ6/1 HNZ6/2	5FS0	HNYM/S HNYM/1S	HNYT/S HNYT/1S HNYT/2S
Capacity (cm ³)	1,199	1,598	1,199	
Max power: EEC standard (kW)	81	88	96	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 12% gradient	1,200	1,300	1,300	1,300
Unbraked trailer (kg)	635	640	640	655
Recommended nose weight (kg)	75	75	75	75

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.

.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

Diesel engines and towed loads

Diesel engine	HDi 90	HDi 90 FAP	BlueHDi 100		e-HDi 115	
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed (ETG5)	Manual 5-speed (ETG5)	Manual 5-speed (ETG5)		Manual 6-speed (ETG6)	
Model codes: NC...	9HJC 9HJC/1	9HP0	BHY6 BHY6/1	BHY6/2S	9HD8/S 9HD8/1S	9HD8/2S
Capacity (cm ³)	1,560	1,560	1,560		1,560	
Max power: EEC standard (kW)	68	68	73		84	
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 12% gradient	800	1,100	1,300	1,300	1,300	400
Unbraked trailer (kg)	640	640	635	640	670	400
Recommended nose weight (kg)	75	75	75	75	75	75

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres (for example: MICHELIN Energy Saver).

.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

Diesel engines	BlueHDi 115 S&S		BlueHDi 120 S&S		BlueHDi 150 S&S
Gearboxes	Manual 6-speed (ETG6)	Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)	Manual 6-speed (ETG6)	Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)	Manual 6-speed (ETG6)
Model codes: NC...	BHXM/S BHXM/1S BHXM/2S	BHXT/S BHXT/1S BHXT/2S	BHXM/S BHXM/1S BHXM/2S	BHXT/S BHXT/1S BHXT/2S	AHRM/S AHRM/1S AHRM/2S
Capacity (cm ³)	1,560		1,560		1,997
Max power: EEC standard (kW)	85		88		110
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel		Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 12% gradient	1,300	1,200	1,300	1,200	1,500
Unbraked trailer (kg)	675	685	675	685	715
Recommended nose weight (kg)	75	75	75	75	75

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres (for example: MICHELIN Energy Saver).

.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

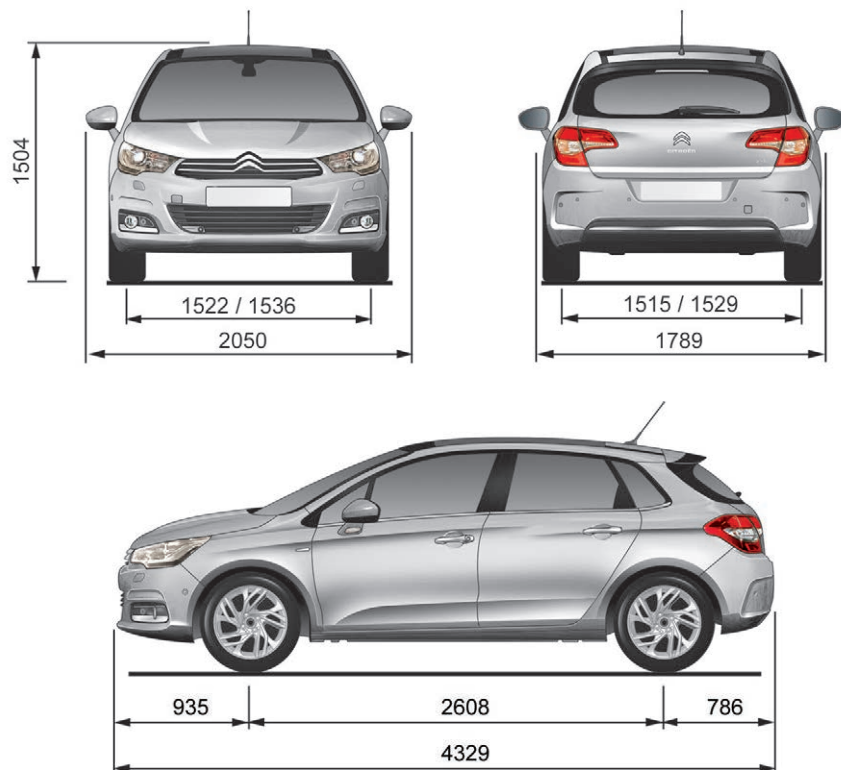
C4 Enterprise versions (2-seat)

Weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engines	HDi 90 FAP	HDi 115	e-HDi 115	BlueHDi 100	BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed (ETG5)	Manual 6-speed (ETG6)	Manual 6-speed (ETG6)	Manual 5-speed (ETG5)	Manual 6-speed (ETG6)
Model codes: NR...	9HP0/1	9HD8 9HD8/1	9HD8/1S 9HD7/1S	BHY6/1	BHZM/1S
Unladen weight	1,313	1,283	1,283	1,326	1,389
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1,745	1,810	1,810	1,775	1,840
Payload (including driver)	432	527	527	449	451
Gross train weight (GTW), the authorised total weight of the tractor unit and trailer and load on a 12% gradient	2,845	3,110	3,110	3,075	3,090
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% gradient	1,100	1,300	1,300	1,300	1,250
Unbraked trailer	635	670	670	650	685
Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75	75

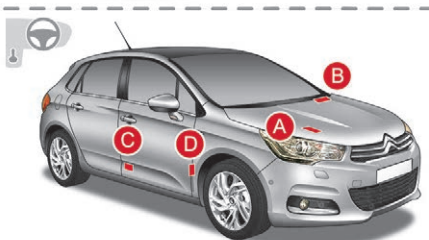
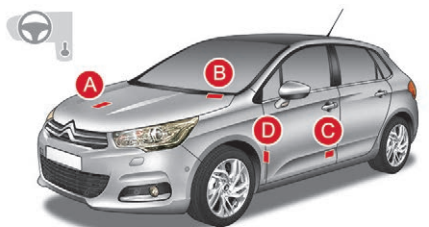
Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.

The number is engraved on the body structure.

B. Vehicle identification number (VIN), on the dashboard.

The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

This self-destructing label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the Gross vehicle weight (GVW)
- the maximum authorised vehicle + trailer weight (the Gross Train Weight or GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres/paint code label.

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information on the tyres:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Checking tyre pressures

The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least once a month.

The pressures indicated on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm; in this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

! Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.



Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

CITROËN Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	14
Applications	17
Radio	22
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	24
Media	25
Telephone	27
Settings	32
Frequently asked questions	36

i The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

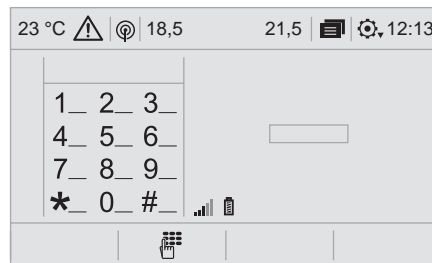
You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

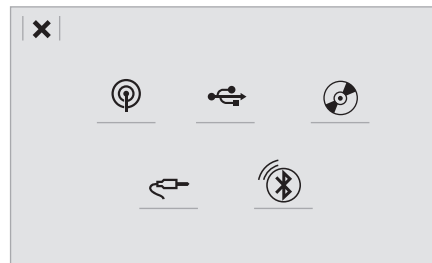
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB*/AM* radio stations.
- USB key.
- CD Player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast* (streaming).



* Depending on equipment.

i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system which may go into stand-by (display and sound completely off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

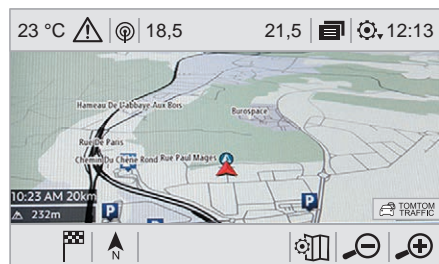
Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

Connected navigation



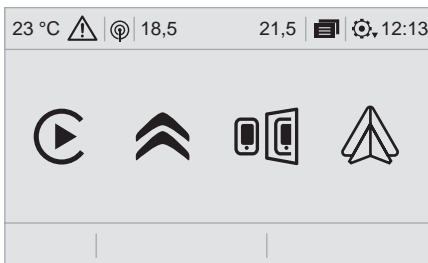
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination. Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



Applications



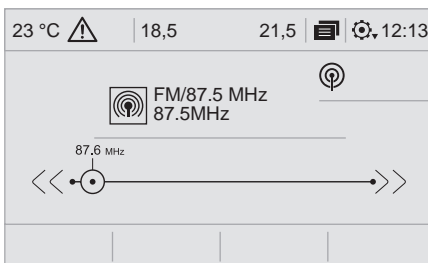
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto. Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.



Radio Media



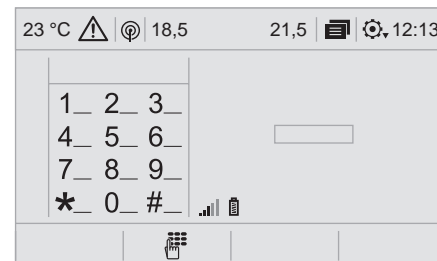
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



Telephone



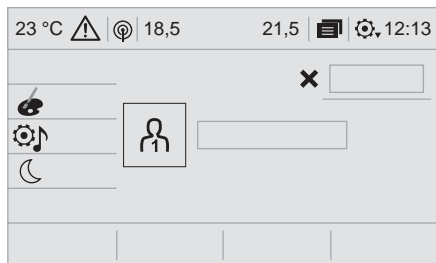
Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.



Configuration



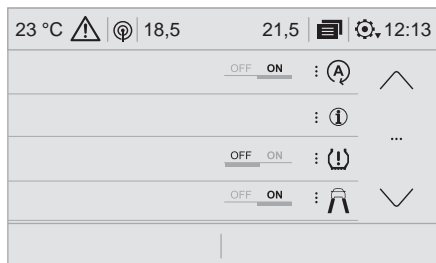
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Vehicle



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

- !** To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
 - always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
 - for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version),
 - before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

First steps



Example of a voice command for navigation:

"Navigate to address", "11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a voice command for the radio and media:

"Play artist", "Madonna".

Example of a voice command for the telephone:

"Call David Miller".

- !** The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian Portuguese), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms. Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/... The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information – Using the system





Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "beginner" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands





These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice commands, you can say "help with voice commands".
Help with voice commands	
Help with navigation	
Help with radio	
Help with media	
Help with phone	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Set dialogue mode as <...>	
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Navigate home	<p>To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".</p> <p>To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.</p>
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

"Telephone" voice commands

i If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be made from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.



 Voice commands	 Help messages
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 10,7,776,835,417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

i If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be made from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<p>Send quick message to <...></p>	<p>To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.</p>
<p>Listen to most recent message*</p>	<p>Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".</p>

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

i The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choosing of a destination

To a new destination



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

i In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

i Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

i A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

To GPS coordinates



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.

The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.

The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "**Applications**" section).

Wi-Fi Connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "**Applications**" section).

Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (option).

The workflow and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Map**".



Activate or deactivate:

- "Allow declaration of danger zones".
- "Guidance to final destination on foot"
- "Authorise sending information"

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select "Alerts".



Activate or deactivate "Warn of danger zones".



Select this button.



Activate: **Give an audible warning**



To access connected navigation you must select the option "Authorise sending information".



The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"



To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you must select the option "Allow declaration of danger zones".



Press "Navigation" to display the primary page.



Press the "Declare a new danger zone" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen



Select the option "Type" to choose the type of "Danger zone".



Select the "Speed" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "OK" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger zones" pack updates



Press "Settings" to display the primary page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "System settings".



Select the "System info" tab.



Select "View" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "Update(s) due".



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Display the weather



Press "**Navigation**" to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

i The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet Browser



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

i Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**[®] functions, **MirrorLink**[™] or **Android Auto**.

Applications



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay[®] smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated. As the workflow and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated.** For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary.**

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen. The workflow and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.** For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

The different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the system's menus is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The workflow and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

The different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the system's menus is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menu by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers, is deactivated.

i There may be a waiting time for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth connection®

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "Bluetooth connection".



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

i The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/Or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Managing connections



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.

First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency. (refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Displaying text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current medium is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the medium previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK

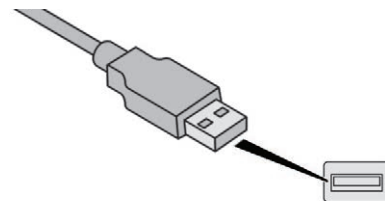
Press "OK".

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

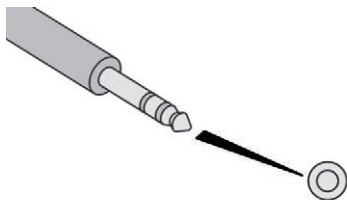
! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on model/depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is via the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (.mp4, etc.) can be read. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " "; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth® mobile telephone with the Bluetooth® hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

i Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

! The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

i The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

i This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

SRC



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press

SRC



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Sent**" or "**Incoming**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.



Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Configuration

Audio settings



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Distribution**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The sound balance / distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio settings **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the balance / distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

i

The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

!

Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Distribution**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 Select the display format of the date.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Colour schemes

! As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Select "**Colour schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	When guidance is not active, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts except during guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	On starting and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been burned in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a burned CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters of the information for the currently playing medium are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>When changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.</p>	<p>The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.</p>
<p>When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.</p>	<p>The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.</p>	<p>To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (,,) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.</p>
<p>When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.</p>	<p>Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.</p>
<p>The date and time cannot be set.</p>	<p>Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.</p>	<p>Menu Settings/Options/Setting the Time-Date. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).</p>

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o. Europe

1999/5/EC Directive regulatory notices

This device has been evaluated against the essential requirements of the 1999/5/EC Directive.

Bulgarian	С настилощето ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" декларира, че ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" отговаря на съществените изисквания и другите приложими изисквания на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Croatian	Orime ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" izjavljuje da je ovaj ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" je u skladu s osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Czech	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" úmto prohlásuje, že tento ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Danish	Undertegnede ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" erklærer herved, at følgende udskrift ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" overholder de væsentligste krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Dutch	Hierbij verklaart ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" dat het toestel ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
English	Hereby, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" declares that this ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Estonian	Käesolevaga kinnitab ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" seadme ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
German	Hiermit erkläre ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" , dass sich das Gerät ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Greek	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΕΚΤΙΜΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Hungarian	Aldfrott, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" nyilatkozik, hogy a ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Finnish	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" vakuuttaa täten että ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
French	Par la présente ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" déclare que l'appareil ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Icelandic	Hér með lýsir ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" yfir því að ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur, og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskiptum 1999/5/EF.
Italian	WAVEZ è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latvian	Ar šo ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" deklarē, ka ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lithuanian	Šiuo ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" deklaruojama, kad šis ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktivos nuostatas.
Maltese	Hawnhekk, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" jidhikjara li dan ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" jikkonforma mal-higijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Norwegian	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" erklærer herved at utstyret ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polish	Niniejszym ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" tymto oświadczam, że ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosowanymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/CE.
Portuguese	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" declara que este ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovak	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" týmto vyhlasuje, že ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovenian	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" izjavlja, da je ta ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Spanish	Por medio de la presente ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" declara que ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Swedish	Härmed intägar ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o."" att denna ""MAC EUR WAVEZ" står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

In order to satisfy the essential requirements of 1999/5/EC Directive, the product is compliant with the following standards:

RF spectrum use (R&TTE art. 3.2)	ETSI EN 300 328 V1.9.1 (2015-02)
EMC (R&TTE art. 3.1b)	ETSI EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011-09)
	ETSI EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012-09)
	ETSI EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1 (2010-08)
	EN 55013 (2013) EN 55020 (2007)
Health & Safety (R&TTE art. 3.1a)	EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A12:2011 + A1:2010 + AC:2011 + A2:2013
RoHS	2011/65/UE, 2014/1/UE, 2014/6/UE, 2014/8/UE, 2014/16/UE

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body:

AT4 wirelless, S.A.
Parque Tecnológico de Andalucía
C/ Severo Ochoa 2
29590 Campanillas – Málaga
SPAIN
Notified Body No: 1909

Thus, the following marking is included in the product (**Label on top**):

CE 1909

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union.

- Specific instructions of installation and proper use of the equipment

This Multimedia System Equipment must be fixed in a car dashboard.

This Equipment is intended to be installed by service persons or qualified operators in a restricted access location that can only be accessed by using a tool.

The external devices and accessories connected to the equipment shall comply its product standard in order to prevent fire risks.

Fuse characteristics:

MINI AUTO FUSE W Yellow 20:

Voltage rated: 32V (Volts)

Current rated: 20A (Amperes)

600	0.30 seconds	0.100 seconds
350	0.080 seconds	0.250 seconds
200	0.15 seconds	5 seconds
135	0.75 seconds	600 seconds
110	100 hours	-
% of rating	Minimum	Maximum
	Blow Time	

- List of countries within the EU or geographical zones where it can be used.

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union:

Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, United Kingdom,

- Information about the license that apply to it.
- There is no specific license.
- Restrictions or possible additional restrictions when trying to achieve the authorisation of use of the equipment.
- There is no specific restriction to achieve the authorisation of use of the equipment.

USA – Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

FCC ID: ZFW-NACEUR2

1. Modification Statement

“Continental Automotive Rambouillet France S.A.S.” has not approved any changes or modifications to this device by the user. Any changes or modifications could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

2. Interference statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

3. Wireless notice:

This device complies with FCCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

4. FCC Class A/B digital device or peripheral notice – Class

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

CITROËN Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	9
Media	10
Telephone	12
Settings	18
Frequently asked questions	21

i The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

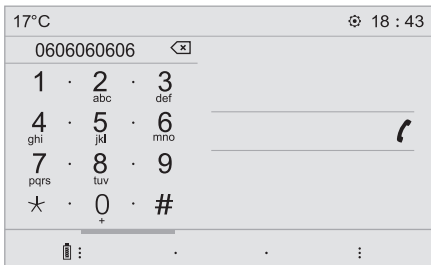
All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

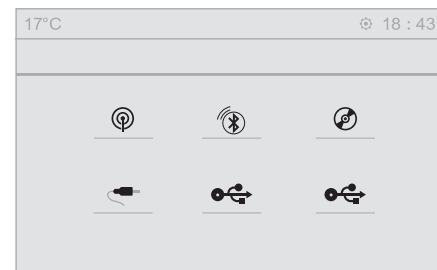
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB*/AM* radio stations.
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast* (streaming).
- CD player (depending on model).
- USB key.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

* Depending on equipment.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system which may go into stand-by (display and sound completely off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

SRC



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): previous/next preset.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

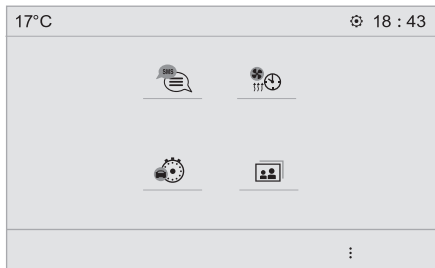
Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

Applications



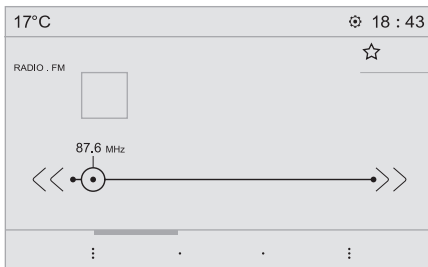
Access configurable equipment.



Radio Media



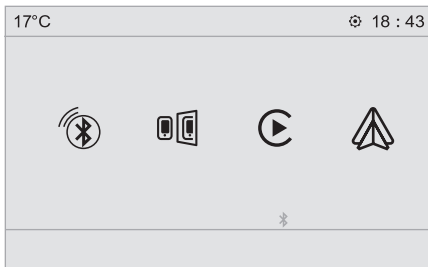
Select an audio source or radio station.



Telephone



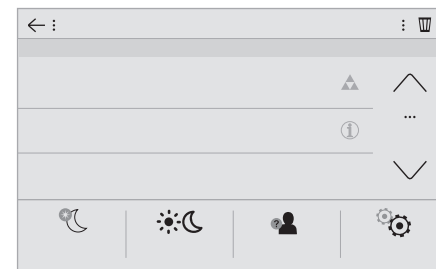
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving



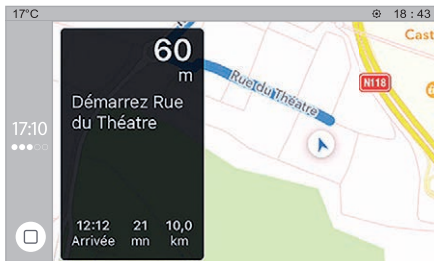
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation



Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: ".tiff"; ".gif"; ".jpg/jpeg"; ".bmp"; ".png".



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.



Press "Photos".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search for a contact.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing waveband



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Displaying text information



The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**INFO**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Listening to TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

i In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources. On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

i Onboard audio: the Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Waveband**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".



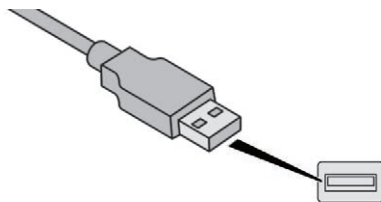
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. When the digital signal quality becomes good, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

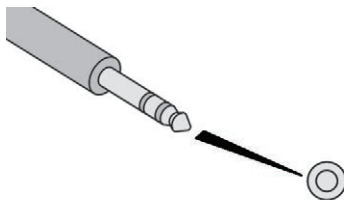
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First, adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is via the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (.mp4, etc.) can be read. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " ?; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The workflow and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The MirrorLink™ function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"MirrorLink™"** function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

The different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.

Access to the system's menus is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated. As the workflow and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Smartphone connection Android Auto

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The workflow and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "Telephone" to display the primary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

The different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the system's menus is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

- There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

- As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

- Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

- To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Workflow



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "Bluetooth search".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

- If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.

- Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

- On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Configuration

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

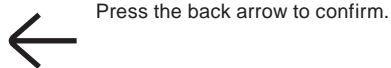
Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0

Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjusting the brightness



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.




Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".




Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press "**Animation**".


 Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".


 Select "**Animated transitions**".


 Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

 Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.


 Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**Language**" to change the language.

 Press the back arrow to confirm.


Setting the time

 Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.


 Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

 Press "**Date and time**".


Select "**Time**".


 Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.


OK Press "**OK**" to save the time.

 Press this button to define the time zone.

 Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).


 Press the back arrow to save the settings.

 The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

 Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.

 Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

 Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

- i** Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).</p>	<p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.</p>	<p>Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p>
	<p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.</p>
	<p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>	<p>Have the aerial checked by a dealer.</p>
<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.</p>	<p>Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.</p>
	<p>Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters of the information for the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>When changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.</p> <p>When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.</p>	<p>The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.</p>
<p>When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected.</p> <p>When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.</p>	<p>The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.</p>	<p>To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.</p>
<p>When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.</p> <p>The switch-off is normal, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.</p>	<p>Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.</p>

Česky [Czech]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH tímto prohlašuje, že tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved, at følgende udsytr "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH seadme "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΟΝΕΙΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklarē, ka "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaruoju, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malta [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jidher li dan "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jikkonforma mal-ħigijiet essenzjali u ma pprovdimentat oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Aldulirott Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozom, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadczam, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostajymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH izjavlja, da je ta "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenhetskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Slovenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH yfir því að "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved at utstyret "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

<p>ECE type-approval certificate No. is 057902 (concerning the type-approval of an electric/electronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)</p>	<p>emitted frequency range and power: Frequency band Radiated Power [EIRP] Hints / Restriction 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz WiFi < 51mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth < 2.0 mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 & A2 Antenna configuration: internal antenna Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.</p>
<p>Brazil</p>	 <p>"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."</p>
<p>Canada</p>	<p>This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p>
<p>Japan</p>	<p>R= Radio Type Approval Number: BBBBRRBBBBBB T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: X-JJ-5NINN-AAA NOM-121-SCT1-2009</p>
<p>Mexico</p>	<p>La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.</p>
<p>South Korea</p>	<p>해당 무선 설비는 운용중 전파혼신 가능성이 있음. 1. 본產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十二條、第十四條等條文規定</p>
<p>Taiwan</p>	<p>經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 2. 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。 This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p>
<p>USA / Canada</p>	<p>Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by (Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH) may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.</p>

Audio system/Bluetooth®



Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	3
Radio	4
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	5
Media	6
Telephone	10
Audio settings	14
Frequently asked questions	15

i The system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.
To prevent discharging of the battery when the engine is stopped, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes.

First steps



Volume adjustment.



On/Off.

TA (Traffic Announcement) function On/Off.

TA INFO

Long press: access to type of information.

Select the source:

SOURCE Radio, CD, AUX, USB, Streaming.
Accept an incoming call.



Manual step by step up/down frequency search for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist of the USB device.
Scroll in a list.

Access to the main menu.

MENU



Automatic search for a lower/higher radio frequency.
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.

- 1 Select a preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.



Cancel the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

LIST

Display the list of stations received, the CD/MP3 tracks or folders.

Long press: manage the classification of MP3/WMA files/ update the list of stations received.



Adjust audio settings: sound ambience, treble, bass, loudness, distribution, left/right balance, front/rear balance, automatic volume.



Select the screen display mode, between:

Full screen: Audio (or telephone if call in progress)/

Windowed screen: Audio (or telephone if call in progress) – Time or Trip computer.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

BAND Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands*.

Steering mounted controls

Audio system/Bluetooth telephone



Media: change the multimedia source.

Telephone: start a call.

Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).

Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call; when there is no call in progress, access to the telephone menu.



Radio, rotate: automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media, rotate: previous/next track.
Press: confirm a selection.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

* Depending on the model.

Audio system



Media: change the multimedia source.
Press and hold: mute/restore sound.

Menus

Screen C



"Multimedia": Media settings, Radio settings.



"Telephone": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.



"Trip computer": Warning log.



"Bluetooth connection": Connections management, Search for a device.



"Personalisation-configuration": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time setting.


Screen A



Radio

Selecting a station

! The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, basement, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

SOURCE  Press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select radio.

BAND Press **BAND** to select a waveband.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received, in alphabetical order.



Select the desired radio station and confirm by pressing **OK**.



A press changes to the next or previous letter (e.g. A, B, D, F, G, J, K, ...).

LIST A long press on **LIST** builds or updates the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.

RDS

i RDS, if displayed, makes it possible to continue listening to the same radio station using the alternative frequencies function. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

OK Select "**RDS**" and confirm to save. "**RDS**" is displayed in the screen.

Playing TA messages

i The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the medium previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA INFO Press **TA INFO** to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.

Playing INFO messages

i The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the INFO message. Normal play of the medium previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA INFO Make a long press on **TA INFO** to display the list of categories.



Select or deselect categories to activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Displaying TEXT INFOS

i Text info is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

Screen C

OK

When the radio is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.



Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

Screen A

Select "**MEDIA**" and confirm.

Then select "**TEXT INFO**" and press **◀** or **▶** to select "**ON**" or "**OFF**" and confirm to save the modifications.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Digital Radio

i Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO). The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

BAND Change band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)



Change of station within the same "multiplex service".



Start a search for the next "multiplex service".

TA INFO

Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

- When the radio is displayed in the screen, press **"OK"** to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency hopping (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB/FM auto tracking

- "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

MENU Press the **"Menu"** button.

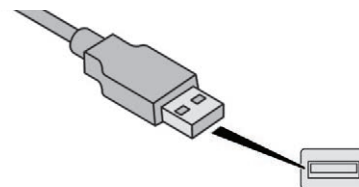
◀▶ Select **"Multimedia"** and confirm.

▲
▼ Select **"DAB / FM auto tracking"** and confirm.

- If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to analogue radio "FM", sometimes with a change in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

- ! If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option struck-through), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not enabled, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media USB port



Audio files on a portable mass storage player* can be heard through the vehicle's speakers by connecting it to the USB port (cable not supplied).

- ! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

- Management of the device is via the audio system controls.

If the portable player is not recognised by the USB port, connect it to the auxiliary Jack socket.

The Apple® player software must be updated regularly for the best connection.

The playlists are those defined in the Apple® player.

* Check the manual for your player

The Apple® player must be generation 5 or later.

USB memory stick – File sorting

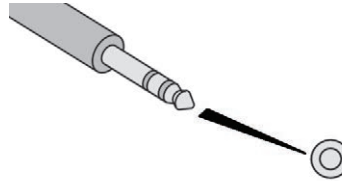
LIST Make a long press on **LIST** or press **MENU**, select "**Multimedia**", then "**Media settings**" and finally "**Choice of track listing**" to display the different types of sorting.

▲ Once the desired sorting ("**By folders**"/"**By artists**"/"**By genres**"/"**By playlists**") is selected, press **OK**.

OK Then confirm with **OK** to save the changes.

- **By folders:** all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order without following the folder structure.
- **By artists:** all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, in alphabetical order.
- **By genres:** all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- **By playlists:** if playlists have been saved.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



The auxiliary Jack socket permits the connection of a portable non-mass storage device or an Apple® player if not recognised by the USB port.

! Do not connect a device to the USB port and to the auxiliary Jack socket at the same time.

Connect the portable device to the auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device.



Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

The display and management of controls is on the portable device.

Playing a CD

Insert 12 cm diameter circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Without pressing the **EJECT** button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

◀▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing a compilation

! Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player or connect a memory stick to the USB port, directly or via an extension lead.


The system creates playlists (temporary memory), which can take from a few seconds to several minutes.


The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.


Play starts automatically after a certain amount of time depending on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

At the first connection, the order suggested is by folder. When connecting again, the previously chosen order is retained.


To play a disc or memory stick which has already been inserted, press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select "CD" or "USB".

 Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous track.


 Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous folder in the order chosen.


 Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the structure of the folders in the compilation.

 Select a line in the list.

OK Select a track or a folder.

 Up a level in the menu.

 Skip a track.

Streaming – Playing audio files via Bluetooth


Depending on the compatibility of the phone

Streaming allows music files on a telephone to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

The telephone must support the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP/AVRCP).



Pair/connect the telephone: see the TELEPHONE section.

SOURCE  Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE** or **SRC**. Control of playback is via the audio system. Contextual information may be displayed in the screen.

! In certain cases, playback of the audio files must be initiated from the telephone.

The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Play mode

- !** The play modes available are:
- Normal: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
 - Random: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
 - Random all: all of the tracks saved in the medium are played in random order.
 - Repeat: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

Press **OK** for access to the contextual menu.
or
Press **MENU**.

◀◀▶▶ Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

OK

◀◀▶▶ Select "**Media settings**" and confirm.

OK

◀◀▶▶ Select "**Play mode**" and confirm.

OK



Select the desired play mode and confirm **OK** to save the changes.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with extension ".mp3" or ".wma" and a compression rate that is constant or variable between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

To avoid any playback or display issues, it is advisable to create file names that have less than 20 characters and without using any special characters (e.g. «?.; ù).

Playlists accepted are types ".m3u" and ".pls". The number of files is limited to 5,000 in 500 directories on a maximum of 8 levels.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is recommended that this be kept to 2 levels so as to limit the time taken to access and play the CD.
The folder structure is not observed during playback.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted to FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

! Do not connect a hard disk or USB device other than audio players to the USB port.

Telephone

Pairing a telephone First-time connection

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.

Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on. Visit the website for your country for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone user guide).

MENU Press **MENU**.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" and confirm.



Select "**Search for a device**".

A "**Search in progress...**" window is displayed.



Select the telephone to be connected from the list and confirm. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

In some cases, the reference number of the telephone or the Bluetooth address may appear instead of the name of the telephone.



A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits and conform with **OK**.

A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone: enter the same code and confirm.

In case of failure, the number of attempts is not restricted.

Accept the connection on the telephone.

A message appears in the screen to confirm successful connection.



Pairing can also be initiated from the telephone by searching for detected Bluetooth devices.

The directory and the call list can be accessed after the necessary synchronisation period (if the telephone is compatible).

Automatic connection must be configured in the telephone to allow the connection each time the vehicle is started.

Managing connections



The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Two profiles can be connected by default.


MENU Press **MENU**.





Select "**Bluetooth connection**" and confirm.



Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.

i  Indicates that a device is connected.

 Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.

 Indicates connection of the the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone and confirm.




Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**"/"**Disconnect telephone**": to connect/disconnect the telephone or the hands-free connection only.
- "**Connect media player**"/"**Disconnect media player**": to connect/disconnect only streaming.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**"/"**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect/disconnect the telephone (hands-free and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.



Making a call – Dialling

- SOURCE**  To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Make a long press on **SOURCE** or **SRC**.
 - Or, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
 - Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.

OK

Select "**Dial**" to enter a number and confirm.



Select numbers one at a time using the **◀** and **▶** buttons and confirm.




Correction allows numbers to be deleted one at a time.



Select **OK** and confirm to start the call.

Making a call – Recently called numbers

(Depending on the compatibility of the phone)

- SOURCE**  To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Press and hold **SRC/TEL**.
 - Or, press the thumb wheel to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
 - Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.

Select "**Calls list**" and confirm.




Select the number and confirm to start the call.



i The calls list includes calls sent and received in the vehicle using the connected telephone.

! It is possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Making a call – From the directory of contacts

- SOURCE  To display the "TELEPHONE" menu:
- Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
 - Or, press the thumb wheel to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
 - Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.

- ▲ Select "**Directory**" and confirm.
- ▼
- OK**
- ▲
- ▼
- OK**



Home
Work
Mobile
(depending on the information available in the contact records of the telephone connected).

- ▲ Select the number and confirm.
- ▼
- OK**

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the multifunction screen.

- ▶▶▶▶ "YES" to accept the call is selected by default. Press **OK** to accept the call. Select "**NO**" and confirm to reject the call.
- or
- Press one of these buttons to accept the call.



SOURCE 




A long press on **ESC** or on **TEL**, **SOURCE** or **SRC** also rejects an incoming call.

Managing calls

- OK** During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

Ending a call

- ▲ In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.
- ▼
- OK**

SOURCE  A long press on one of these buttons also ends the call.



Secret – Mute

- ▲ (so that the caller cannot hear)
- ▼
- OK**

- ▲
▼
OK
- In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
 - deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

Telephone mode

(to leave the vehicle without ending the call)

- ▲
▼
OK
- In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone.
 - deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

In some cases, the telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).


Interactive voice response

- ▲
▼
OK
- From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the numerical keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

Consultation call

- ▲
▼
OK
- From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and confirm to return to a call left on hold.

Directory

- SOURCE 
- ▲
▼
OK
- To access the directory, press and hold **SOURCE** or **SRC**. or press **OK**, and select "**Call**" and confirm.

- ▲
▼
OK
- Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

- MENU**
- To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.

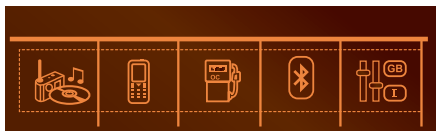



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Audio settings

Screen C



Press  to display the audio settings menu.


The settings available are:


- Ambience,
- Bass,
- Treble,
- Loudness,
- Distribution: Personalised or Driver,
- Left/right balance,
- Fader (front/rear balance),
- Auto volume.




Select and confirm "**Other settings...**" to display the rest of the list of settings available.

OK


 The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system), is an audio process which allows the sound quality to be improved according to the setting chosen, corresponding to the position of the listeners in the vehicle.

 The audio Ambience, Treble and Bass settings are different and independent for each sound source.



 Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Screen A






Press  to display the audio settings menu.



Press  or  to modify the selected setting.



Press  or  for the previous or next setting in the list.

 The audio Ambience, Treble and Bass settings are different and independent for each sound source.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
If the bass and treble settings are modified, the ambience selected is cancelled.	The selection of an ambience imposes specific bass and treble settings.	To obtain the desired sound quality, modify the treble and bass settings or select a pre-defined ambience setting.
If the ambience setting is changed, the previous settings for treble and bass are cancelled.		
If the "Driver"/"All passengers" distribution is modified, the balance settings are cancelled.	Choosing a distribution setting imposes a specific balance setting. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired sound quality.
When changing the balance setting, the "Driver"/"All passengers" distribution is cancelled.		

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS mode and start a new search for the station so that the system can check whether a stronger transmitter is available in the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS tracking mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.

The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	<p>The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format that cannot be played by the audio system.</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. - Check the content in the case of a burned CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio system's CD player does not read DVDs. - Because of low quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the website for your country (services).
The Bluetooth connection cuts out.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The "USB peripheral error" or "Peripheral not recognised" message appears on the screen.	<p>The USB memory stick is not recognised.</p> <p>The memory stick could be corrupt.</p>	Reformat the memory stick (FAT 32).

<p>A telephone connects automatically, disconnecting another telephone.</p>	<p>Automatic connection overrides manual connection.</p>	<p>Modify the telephone settings to remove automatic connection.</p>
<p>The Apple® player is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.</p>	<p>The Apple® player is of a generation that is not compatible with a USB connection.</p>	<p>Connect the Apple® player to the AUX Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).</p>
<p>The hard disk or peripheral is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.</p>	<p>Some hard disks and devices need a power supply greater than is provided by the audio system.</p>	<p>Connect the peripheral to the 230 V socket, the 12V socket or an external power supply. Caution: ensure that the device does not transmit a voltage greater than 5 V (risk of destruction of the system).</p>
<p>When streaming, the sound cuts out momentarily.</p>	<p>Some telephone models prioritise the connection with the "hands-free" profile.</p>	<p>Delete the "hands-free" connection profile to improve streaming.</p>
<p>In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.</p>	<p>In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.</p>	
<p>With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the charge level of the vehicle's battery. The switch-off is normal: energy economy mode is activated automatically to preserve the battery charge level required to start the engine. (See the "Energy Economy Mode" section).</p>	<p>Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.</p>

<p>The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.</p>	<p>In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.</p>	<p>Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.</p>
---	--	---

A

ABS	111
Accessories	108, 141
Accessory position	141
AdBlue®	21, 187,188
Additive, AdBlue	21, 33
Adjusting headlamps	102
Adjusting head restraints	68
Adjusting seat	66-68
Adjusting the date	37-41, 47-48, 35, 20
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel	73
Adjusting the seat belt height	114,115
Adjusting the time	37-41, 47-48, 35, 20
Advice on driving	135,136
Airbags	19, 117, 123
Airbags, curtain	119,120
Airbags, front	118, 120, 123
Airbags, lateral	118,120
Air conditioning, automatic	77-80
Air conditioning, manual	75-76, 80
Alarm	59-61
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)	18, 111
Anti-pinch	64-65
Anti-theft	137
Armrest, front	88-89
Armrest, rear	91
ASR	111
Assistance, emergency braking	111
Assistance call	109,110
Audible warning	109
Audio streaming (Bluetooth)	26, 10, 8
Audio system pre-equipment	178
Auxiliary	26, 10

B

Battery	14, 185, 209,210, 212
Battery, charging	211,212
Battery, remote control	52, 56-58

Black panel	36-37
Blanking screen (snow shield)	172
Blind, panoramic roof	94-95
Blind spot sensors	161,163
BlueHdi	33, 187
Bluetooth (hands-free)	27-28, 15, 10
Bluetooth (telephone)	27-29, 15-16
Bonnet	180,181
Boot	62-63, 94
Brake discs	186
Brake lamps	203,204
Brakes	186
Braking, dynamic emergency	142,144
Brightness	19
Bulbs (changing)	198,199, 203,204

C

Cable, audio	26, 10
Cable, jack	26, 10
Capacity, fuel tank	168,169
CarPlay connection	17, 13
CD	26, 10, 7
CD, MP3	26, 10, 8-9
Central locking	50, 53-54, 58
Centre console	87
Changing a bulb	198,199, 203,204
Changing a fuse	205,209
Changing a wheel	193,194
Changing a wiper blade	107, 179
Changing the remote control battery	52, 56
Checking the engine oil level	32-33
Checking the levels	182,184
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit)	190,192
Checks	181, 185,186
Checks, routine	185,186
Child lock	64-65, 133,134
Children	127, 129,131
Children (safety)	133,134

Child seats	116, 121,122, 126,127, 132
Child seats, conventional	126
Child seats, ISOFIX	128,131
CITROËN Connect Nav	1
CITROËN Connect Radio	1
Clock	47
Closing the boot	50, 62-63
Closing the doors	50, 53-54, 61
Configuration, vehicle	37-43, 47
Connection, Bluetooth	20-21, 27-29, 15-16
Connection, MirrorLink	18, 12, 14
Connection, Wi-Fi network	21
Control, electric windows	64-65
Control, emergency boot release	63
Control, emergency door	51, 55-56
Control, heated seats	70-71
Controls, steering mounted	2-3
Control stalk, lighting	25, 97, 100
Control stalk, wipers	105,107
Courtesy lamps	85-86, 101,102
Cover, load space	95-96
Cruise control	154, 157,159
Cup holder	87

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) – Digital radio	24-25, 9, 5-6
Date (setting)	37-41, 47-48, 35, 20
Daytime running lamps	100, 199, 202
Deactivating the passenger airbag	118, 123
Deadlocking	50, 54
Defrosting	82
Diesel	24
Dimensions	221
Dipstick	32-33, 182,183
Direction indicators	25, 99,100, 199,200, 203,204
Display screen, instrument panel	9-11, 149

Display screen, multifunction
(with audio system) 37-41, 47
 Door pockets 83
 Doors 61
 Doors, rear 133,134
 Drawer, storage 90
 Driving positions (storing) 70
 DSC 111
 Dynamic stability control (DSC) 111,112

E

Earth point, remote 181
 EBA 111
 EBFD 111
 Economy mode 177
 Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 111
 Emergency call 109,110
 Emergency warning lamps 109
 Emissions control 17
 Emissions control system, SCR 22
 Energy economy mode 177
 Engine 17
 Engine, Diesel 170, 214, 218
 Engine, petrol 170, 181, 217
 Engine compartment 181
 Engine failure 17
 Engine oil pressure 14
 Engines 216,218
 Engine self-diagnostics 17
 Environment 58
 ESC/ASR 111

F

Filling the fuel tank 168,170
 Filter, air 185
 Filter, Diesel fuel 181

Filter, oil 185
 Filter, particle 184,185
 Filter, passenger compartment 185
 Fitting a wheel 196,198
 Fitting roof bars 179
 Fittings, boot 91, 95-96
 Fittings, interior 83
 Fittings, rear 91
 Fitting speakers 178
 Flap, fuel filler 168,169
 Flashers 25, 99,100, 200, 202
 Fluid, engine coolant 14
 Foglamps, front 25, 98, 104, 199, 203
 Foglamps, rear 98, 203,204
 Frequency (radio) 23-24
 Fuel 170
 Fuel tank 168,169
 Fusebox, dashboard 205,209
 Fusebox, engine compartment 205,209
 Fuses 205,209

G

Gauge, fuel 168,169
 Gearbox, automatic 146,152, 186
 Gearbox, manual 145, 150,152, 186
 Gear lever, automatic gearbox 146,149
 Gear lever, manual gearbox 145
 Gear shift indicator ~ Gear
 efficiency indicator 149
 Glove box 83
 G.P.S. 13
 Grab handles 83

H

Hazard warning lamps 109
 Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation 109

Headlamp adjustment 102
 Headlamps, automatic illumination 98, 100,101
 Headlamps, dipped beam 97, 199, 201,202
 Headlamps, directional 102,103, 199
 Headlamps, halogen 199,200
 Headlamps, main beam 97, 199, 201,202
 Headlamps, Xenon 199
 Headlamp wash 106
 Head restraints, front 68
 Head restraints, rear 71-72
 Heating 75-76
 Hill start assist 153
 Hooks 92

I

Ignition 138, 141, 31
 Ignition on 141
 Immobiliser, electronic 57, 137
 Indicator, engine oil level 32-33
 Indicator lamps, operation 13, 23
 Indicator lamps, status 23
 Indicators, direction 99, 200
 Inflating tyres 222
 Inflating tyres and accessories
 (using the kit) 190,192
 Input, auxiliary 7
 Instrument panels 9-11
 Intelligent Traction Control 112
 Internet browser 17
 ISOFIX 129,130
 Isofix mountings 128

J

Jack 193,194, 26, 10
 Jump starting 210

K

Key	52-54, 56-57
Key, electronic.....	52-55, 140
Keyless Entry and Starting.....	52-53, 55, 57
Key not recognised.....	140
Key with remote control.....	49-50, 137
Kit, hands-free.....	27-28, 15, 10
Kit, puncture repair.....	190
Kit, temporary puncture repair.....	190,192

L

Labels, identification.....	222
Lamp, boot.....	93-94
Lamps, parking.....	100
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).....	160,161
Level, brake fluid.....	183
Level, Diesel additive.....	184
Level, engine coolant.....	183,184
Level, engine oil.....	32-33, 182,183
Level, power steering fluid.....	183
Levels and checks.....	181,184
Lighting, cornering.....	104
Lighting, dashboard.....	36
Lighting, directional.....	103,104
Lighting, guide-me home.....	100,101
Lighting, interior.....	85-87
Lighting, mood.....	86-87
Lighting, welcome.....	101,102
Lighting dimmer.....	9-11, 36
Loading.....	179
Load reduction mode.....	177
Locating your vehicle.....	51
Locking.....	57
Locking from the inside.....	58
Long objects, transporting.....	91
Low fuel level.....	168,169
Luggage retaining strap.....	91

M

Map reading lamps.....	85-86
Markings, identification.....	222
Message function.....	69
Mat.....	84
Memorising a speed.....	154
Menu.....	13
Menu, main.....	3
Menus (audio).....	4-5, 4-5
Messages.....	31
Messages, quick.....	31
Mirror, rear view.....	75
Mirror, vanity.....	83
Mirrors, door.....	73-74, 161,163
Misfuel prevention.....	169
Mountings, Isofix.....	128
MP3 CD.....	8-9

N

Net, storage.....	91
Number plate lamps.....	205

O

Oil, engine.....	14, 182,183
Oil change.....	182,183
Oil consumption.....	182,183
Opening the bonnet.....	180,181
Opening the boot.....	52-53, 62-63
Opening the doors.....	52-53, 61

P

Pads, brake.....	186
Paint.....	222
Paint colour code.....	222
Panoramic glass sunroof.....	94-95

Parcel shelf, rear.....	92, 95-96
Parking brake.....	141, 186
Parking brake, electric.....	16, 27, 142,144
Parking sensors, front.....	164
Parking sensors, rear.....	163,164
Personalisation.....	12
Plates, identification.....	222
Player, Apple®.....	26, 11
Player, MP3 CD.....	26, 8-9
Player, USB.....	25, 10, 6
Port, USB.....	85, 25, 10, 6-7
Power steering.....	19
Pressures, tyres.....	222
Pre-tensioning seat belts.....	116
Priming the fuel system.....	214
Profiles.....	33, 18
Protecting children.....	118, 121,123, 127,131
Puncture.....	190,192

R

Radio.....	22-23, 26, 6-7, 10, 4
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB).....	24-25, 9, 5
Range, AdBlue.....	33-34
RDS.....	23-24, 7
Rear screen, demisting.....	82
Recharging the battery.....	211,212
Reduction of electrical load.....	177
Regeneration of the particle filter.....	185
Reinitialising the electric windows.....	64-65
Reinitialising the remote control.....	52, 56
Reminder, key in ignition.....	138
Remote control.....	49-50, 52-55, 57
Removing a wheel.....	196,198
Removing the mat.....	84
Replacing bulbs.....	198,199, 203,204
Replacing fuses.....	205,209
Replacing the air filter.....	185

Replacing the oil filter 185
 Replacing the passenger compartment filter 185
 Resetting the service indicator 32
 Resetting the trip recorder 35-36
 Rev counter 9-11
 Reversing lamps 203,204
 Roof bars 179
 Running out of fuel (Diesel) 214

S

Safety, children 118, 121,123, 127, 129,131
 SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 187
 Screen, cold climate 172
 Screen, monochrome 37-41, 47
 Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 37-41, 47, 3
 Screen menu map 13
 Screenwash, front 106
 Screenwash, rear 107
 SCR system 187
 Seat, rear bench 71-72
 Seat belts 114,116, 126
 Seats, electric 67-68
 Seats, front 66-68, 70
 Seats, heated 70-71
 Seats, rear 71-72
 Serial number, vehicle 222
 Service indicator 30
 Servicing 30
 Settings, equipment 37-43, 47
 Settings, system 34, 19
 Sidelamps 97, 100, 199, 202,204
 Side repeater 202
 Ski flap 91
 Snow chains 171
 Socket, 12 V accessory 84, 88, 91-92
 Socket, auxiliary 26, 10, 7
 Socket, JACK 85, 26, 10, 7

Sockets, audio 85, 7
 Sockets, auxiliary 85
 Speakers (fitting) 178
 Speed limiter 154,157
 Speedometer 9-11
 Stability control (ESC) 111
 Starting a Diesel engine 170
 Starting the engine 137
 Starting the vehicle 135, 137,140, 146,149
 Starting using another battery 210
 Station, radio 22-24, 6-7, 4
 Stay, bonnet 180,181
 Steering mounted controls, audio 3, 3
 Steering wheel, adjustment 73
 Stopping the vehicle 135, 137,140, 146,149
 Stop & Start 25, 47, 78, 150,152, 180, 185, 213
 Storage 83, 87-89, 91
 Storage box 93
 Storage compartments 87
 Storing driving positions 70
 Stowing rings 91
 Sun visor 83
 Switching off the engine 137
 Synchronising the remote control 52, 56

T

Table of weights 217,218
 Tables of engines 217,218
 Tables of fuses 205,209
 Tank, AdBlue® additive 187
 Tank, fuel 168,169
 Technical data 217,218
 Telephone 27-32, 15-18
 Temperature, coolant 14
 Three flashes (direction indicators) 99
 Ticket holder 83
 Time (setting) 37-41, 47-48, 35, 20
 TMC (Traffic info) 14

Tools 193,194, 205
 Topping up the AdBlue® additive 187
 Torch 93
 Total distance recorder 35-36
 Touch screen 41-43, 1, 1
 Touch screen tablet 41-43
 Towball, quickly detachable 173,176
 Towbar 136, 172
 Towbar with quickly detachable towball 173,176
 Towed loads 216,218
 Towing another vehicle 213,214
 Traction control (ASR) 111,113
 Traffic information (TA) 4
 Traffic information (TMC) 14
 Trailer 136, 172
 Trip computer 43-46
 Trip distance recorder 35-36
 Tyres 222
 Tyre under-inflation detection 165,166

U

Under-inflation (detection) 165,166
 Unlocking 52-53
 Unlocking, selective 62
 Unlocking from the inside 58
 Unlocking the boot 49
 Unlocking the doors 49
 Updating the date 48, 35, 20
 Updating the time 47-48, 35, 20
 UREA 33
 USB 25-26, 10, 6

V

Ventilation 75-76, 80
 Voice commands 5-10

W

Warning and indicator lamps	13
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater	24
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control system	22
Warning lamp, Service.....	17
Warning lamps	13, 16, 23
Weights	216,218
Wheel, spare	193,195, 222
Window controls	64-65
Wiper, rear.....	107
Wiper blades (changing).....	107, 179
Wipers	24, 105,106
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive.....	105,106

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

Printed in the EU
Anglais

04-17

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z



